

SMACNA MASTER INDEX OF TECHNICAL PUBLICATIONS

JANUARY 2004



**SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS'
NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, INC.
www.smacna.org**

INTRODUCTION

This Master Index was developed to provide SMACNA members and design professionals with a centralized resource of SMACNA technical documents. It includes key words or phrases from 28 SMACNA technical manuals or guides.

The index was designed to be user-friendly by enabling contractors and design professionals to determine at a glance which SMACNA publications cover, for example, “Systems.” By turning to the word “Systems” in the Index, the user can identify SMACNA publications by specific section of a manual or guide. In the case of “Systems,” there are over 10 manuals which cover the topic.

Although abbreviations for each manual or guide are referenced at the bottom of each page, the following is a list of the SMACNA manuals or guides referenced throughout the Master Index:

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards
FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual
FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems
FSE	Food Service Equipment Guidelines
GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction
IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach
IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction
KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems Guidelines
LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging
LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual
MGW	The Manager’s Guide for Welding
OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards Manual
RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide

The Master Index will be updated and published electronically as new or revised technical publications become available.

You may order SMACNA technical publications using your American Express, VISA, or MasterCard by calling (703) 803-2980.



FOREWORD

Development and publication of the Index was necessitated by the continuing evolution of SMACNA's technical services in design and construction standards or guidelines for sheet metal construction.

SMACNA's technical activities remain one of the foundations of strength and service to SMACNA members and the construction industry. There are currently seven contractor-composed technical committees or task forces active in developing and publishing design and construction standards. The talents and resources of 50 committee or task force members—representatives of SMACNA member firms—participate in the following technical committees or task forces:

- Technical Resources Committee
- Fire, Smoke & Radiation Damper Task Force.
- Architectural Sheet Metal Task Force
- Spiral, Round & Flat Oval Duct Task Force
- Double-Wall Duct Task Force
- Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Task Force
- HVAC Duct Construction Standards Task Force
- HVAC Systems Duct Design Task Force

In addition to the technical committee activity and publications, SMACNA sponsors or co-sponsors technical research in all areas of sheet metal construction. SMACNA also maintains strong liaison with other standard setting organizations such as ASHRAE, CSI, NFPA, NAIMA, etc.

Through a combination of a commitment to quality in the design and construction process and increasing liaisons with other industry organizations, it is SMACNA's objective to continue to be the premier sheet metal industry trade association.



A

A Scale, APP 15.1
 A.I.S.I., DCS 4.6; MGW 5.10
 Abrasion, IDC 53; RNDC 2.3, 4.2, 4.5, 4.6, 5.4, 5.5, 5.6, 6.1, 6.3, 6.4, 6.7, 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.5, 7.6, 7.13, 7.14, 7.17, 7.21, 7.27, 7.28, 8.1, 8.55, 9.2, 15.1, 15.42, 16.1, 16.5, 17.12, 17.15
 flatback elbows, IDC 55
 wear areas, IDC 54
 ABS, See Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene
 Absolute
 pressure, TAB 2.19
 temperature, TAB 2.1
 zero, TAB 2.1
 Absorber, APP 12.2
 chiller/heater, APP 12.4
 chillers, APP 2.8, 12.1
 equipment, APP 12.12
 systems, APP 12.1
 Acceptance tests, COM 3.2, 5.1, 5.3, 7.1
 Access, KVS 6.3, 6.4
 Access doors, DCS 2.12; DSIG 1.3-1.7, 2.2-2.8, 3.17, A.4, A.5, A.14.2.4, C.3; FSDG 5.2, 5.3; IDC 60; LAG 3.44; RNDC 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 11.8, 11.31, 11.43, 15.23-15.26, 16.2, 16.7
 blow-thru unit, DCS A.27
 casings, DCS 6.17
 draw-thru unit, DCS A.31
 flange, DSIG C.10, E.20
 round duct, DCS 2.14
 Access opening, fire resistive, KVS 3.3
 Access openings, FRP 7.7; FSDG 4.1; KVS 1.2, 2.13, 4.2, 4.3; PVC 21, 44
 location, PVC 53
 Access panel, DCS 2.12; KVS 5.4, 8.1
 Access to equipment, APP 2.25
 Accessories, DD 3.21; DSIG E.2; FGDC 2.2
 factory supplied, DD 6.15
 Accessory devices, DD 3.20
 Accessory equipment

bathroom exhaust fan, RCSI 10.5
 control, RCSI 9.3
 disconnect provision, RCSI 9.3
 equipment selection, RCSI 6.2
 filters, RCSI 4.5
 grounding, RCSI 9.3
 installation, RCSI 10.2
 metal pipe, RCSI 10.1
 power, RCSI 9.2
 service, RCSI 9.3
 support, RCSI 10.2
 wiring, RCSI 9.3
 ACGIH, IAQ 5.3, 10.6
 Acids, FRP 2.1, 2.2
 Acoustic ratio, LTM A.16
 Acoustical
 attenuation, DD 1.13
 ceiling, DD 11.32, 11.40
 lined ducts, DCS 2.25; DD 11.34, 11.35
 lined elbows, DD 11.36
 Acoustical Insulation and Lagging System (AI&L), LAG 2.15
 Acoustics, APP 1.5; BSAR 7.9
 Acrylics, PVC 68
 Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene (ABS), PVC 67
 Action incremental, APP 3.34
 Action plan, BSAR 1.4
 Active solar heating systems, ESAM 21.1
 Activities log, IAQ A.14
 Actuator, TAB 4.5
 Adding sound pressure levels, DD 11.4
 Adhesives, IAQ 4.1
 liner, DCS v
 Adiabatic
 process, APP 15.1
 Adjustable pattern diffusers, DD 3.15
 Adjusting, BSAR 3.1
 Adsorption filters, APP 2.21
 Advertising, BSAR 1.4, 1.14, 1.15
 Aerodynamic noise, APP 15.1; DD 11.1, 11.20, 15.1
 Aerosols, APP 2.12

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Agenda, TAB 12.4; TABPG 2.4
Air, TAB 2.6, 2.26
 blending, TAB 6.1
 ceilings, shafts, DSIG 2.2
 cleaners, APP 2.12
 cleanliness, APP 1.5
 conditioner, APP 11.2
 conditioning
 contaminant sources, OBUC 2.1
 control, APP 10.16; TAB 9.5
 cooled condensers, APP 12.8
 cooling, DSIG A.1
 density, TAB 2.8
 density correction factors, DD 14.18, 14.57,
 14.61; LTM A.16
 density effects, DD 5.5
 diffusion, DD 3.5
 diffusion performance index (ADPI), DD 3.1,
 3.4
 distribution, DD 4.1; PVC 52; RCSI 3.1; TAB
 6.6
 distribution ceilings, DD 3.15; TAB 6.13
 distribution devices, TAB 12.2; TABPG 2.2
 distribution fundamentals, DD 3.5
 dual path, DCS A.30
 entrainment, TAB 6.6
 exhaust fans, APP 2.18
 filtering, DSIG A.1
 filtration, APP 2.12
 filtration devices, TAB 12.4; TABPG 2.4
 flow, switch, DEHG 6.1
 fresh supply, DSIG A.1
 friction, DEHG 3.2
 heat source, APP 11.13
 inlet types, DD 3.19
 intakes, outdoor, APP 2.2
 measurement devices, DD 10.3
 metric, APP 14.20
 motion characteristics, DD 3.9
 movement, APP 1.5
 openings relief, APP 2.2
 outlets, DD 9.13; OBUC 2.2
 oxygen, DSIG A.1
 single path, DCS A.29
 straight ducts, DD 6.5, 6.69
 strategies, IAQ 1.3
 symbols, DCS 1.2
 system advantages, TAB 7.1
 system basics, TAB 2.21
 system design, TAB 7.9
 system disadvantages, TAB 7.2
 system(s), TAB 7.1
 U.S., APP 14.19
 valves, TAB 6.3
 velocity, DSIG A.1; TAB 6.6

 velocity meter, TAB 13.11; TABPG 3.11
 volume, TAB 5.10
Air balance, KVS 7.1
Air bubbles, FRP 3.3, 4.7, 7.1
Air distribution, DSIG A.1
Air Distribution System, FSDG E.1
Air Duct Systems, FSDG 3.1, E.1
Air flow direction, KVS 2.13
Air handling system, DSIG B.1
 central, DSIG A.1
 zones, DSIG A.1
Air intakes, IAQ 6.10
Air Leakage Control, FSDG F.3
Air movement, KVS 1.2
Air piping, SEIS 3.2
Air pollutants, OBUC 2.1
Air pollution, FRP 1.1
Air pollution control units (APCU), KVS 3.3, 3.4
 purpose, KVS 3.4
Air Pressure Differential, FSDG F.1
Air quality assessment, OBUC 2.6
Air sampling, OBUC 5.2
Air Sampling-Type Detector, FSDG E.1
Air terminal boxes, TAB 6.1
 dual duct, TAB 6.2
 reheat, TAB 6.1
 types, TAB 6.1
Air terminal devices, RCSI 1.4
Air terminals, DSIG 1.3
Air velocities in ducts, DSIG E.1
Air volume control, KVS 2.13
Air washer chart, DD 9.11
Airborne
 contaminants sources of, OBUC 2.1
 building systems, OBUC 2.1, 2.2, 2.2
 construction products, OBUC 2.1
 equipment, OBUC 2.1
 identifying, OBUC 4.2
 release during demolition, OBUC 2.1
 waste materials, OBUC 2.1
 noise, DD 11.1, 15.1
 sound, DD 15.2
Airflow, FSDG 5.1
 adjustment, TAB 14.8; TABPG 4.8
 clean room, APP 9.3
 control, APP 3.6
 measurements, TAB 13.7; TABPG 3.7
 measuring instruments, TAB 11.1, 11.9
 rate, TAB 6.1
 requirements, RCSI 6.2
 maximum fan, APP 7.26
 maximum zone, APP 7.25
 terminals, TAB 13.6; TABPG 3.6
 totals, TAB 13.6; TABPG 3.6
Airfoil fans, TAB 5.2

Air-hydronic systems, APP 2.1
 Airstream mixtures, TAB 2.17
 Air-to-air
 heat pump, APP 11.2, 11.11
 plate exchangers, DD 9.12
 single tube exchangers, DD 9.12
 Air-to-transmission ratio, APP 8.6
 Air-to-water heat pumps, APP 11.13
 Air-vapor relationship, TAB 2.7
 Air-water induction unit, APP 8.2
 Ak factors, TAB 13.5; TABPG 3.5
 Alarm printers, TAB 4.9
 Alcohols, IAQ 4.1
 Alkalies, FRP 2.1, 2.2
 Alkanes, IAQ 3.9
 All air systems, APP 2.1
 All hydronic systems, APP 2.1
 All water systems, APP 10.1
 Allergens, IAQ 4.1
 Alloys, MGW 2.23
 Alternative investments, IAQ 14.8
 Alternative mode, TAB 15.12; TABPG 5.12
 Aluminized steel, RNDC 3.1
 Aluminum, DD 12.2; DSIG B.1; LAG 1.2, 1.5;
 MGW 2.22, 2.29, 5.10; RNDC iii, 1.1, 1.2, 1.4, 3.2,
 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.13, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 5.1, 5.8, 7.2, 7.3,
 8.24, 10.1, 11.1, 11.3, 11.42, 11.45, 11.46, 11.47,
 11.48-11.51, 11.52, 11.53, 12.1, 12.2, 12.16, 12.17,
 12.18-12.20, 12.24, 12.25, 12.25, 12.28, 12.34,
 12.52, 12.56, 12.61, 12.62, 13.1, 13.14, 13.15, 14.5,
 14.11, 14.12, 15.29, 17.13; RSMG C.8, 1.12, 1.13,
 1.17, 1.27, 1.30
 advantages, DSIG B.1
 applications, DSIG B.1
 conversion from steel, DCS 1.58
 dimension adjustments, DCS 1.59
 reinforcements, DCS 1.59
 thickness adjustments, DCS 1.59
 duct construction, DCS 1.58
 duct weight tables, DCS A.5
 sheet thicknesses, DCS A.5; DSIG B.6

Aluminum Association, DSIG B.6
 AMCA, BSAR 3.15; FSDG R.1
 AMCA Standard 210, KVS 4.1
 American Marketing Association, BSAR 1.1
 American National Standards Institute (ANSI),
 FSDG 3.1
 Amperage, MGW 3.3
 Amperage Readings, TAB 3.5
 Analog in (AI), APP 3.45
 Analog n (AI), TAB 4.8
 Analog out (AO), APP 3.45; TAB 4.9
 Analysis of Measurements, TAB 13.3; TABPG 3.3
 Anchor, FGDC 6.6
 Anchor bolts
 companion angles, GSSC 4.34
 length, GSSC 6.10
 placement (figure), GSSC 4.2
 Anchors, SEIS 2.1
 Anemometer, APP 15.2; TAB 11.5
 deflection vane, TAB 11.6, 11.9
 electric rotating vane, TAB 11.6, 11.9
 thermal, TAB 11.7, 11.9
 Angle, FGDC 5.14
 connectors, SEIS 2.3
 flanges, RCDC 8.7
 properties, DCS A.12
 Angle reinforcing
 aluminum, DCS 1.59
 Angular conversion (to metric), DD 14.17
 Animal dander, IAQ 5.2
 Annual
 cost, DD 2.2
 operating cost, ESAM 14.10
 owning cost, BSAR 1.22
 Annual flow indicator, TAB 11.25
 ANSI, MGW 4.4
 ANSI standard, DSIG B.4
 ANSI/ASME RTPB1, FRP 5.1, E.1
 ANSI/NFPA 91, FRP E.1
 ANSI/NSF-2-1996, FSE 1.1
 Antimony Trioxide, FRP 2.1, 2.2, 2.4

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Appearance, FRP 3.3, 7.1, 7.9
 Application, See Also Heater applications; FRP 2.5, 5.9, 6.1, 6.9; PVC 61
 grille and register, DD 3.12
 guide, APP 1.4
 slot diffuser, DCS 2.19; DD 3.13
 Applied heat pump systems, APP 11.11
 Approach, cooling tower, APP 12.14
 Architect, FSDG 4.1
 Architects, KVS 1.1
 Area change losses, DD 5.18
 Area Separation Wall, FSDG 2.1
 Area Separations, FSDG 3.3
 Area table, IDC 84
 Area-Type Smoke Detector, FSDG E.1
 ARI, BSAR 8.16
 Aromatic hydrocarbons, IAQ 3.10
 Asbestos, DSIG B.2; IAQ 10.6
 Asbestos Cement, DSIG B.2
 advantages, DSIG B.2
 former applications, DSIG B.2
 remarks, DSIG B.2
 ASHRAE, BSAR 1.12, 4.1, 5.4, 6.3, 6.4, 8.2, 8.13, 10.1; DSIG A.2; FSDG R.1; IAQ 1.2, 3.7, 9.3, 10.4; RSMG C.15
 Fundamentals Handbook, DSIG A.2
 Systems Handbook, DSIG C.42
 ASHRAE handbooks, KVS 1.3, 2.1
 ASME, MGW 5.10
 Aspect ratio, DD 2.3, 2.4
 Assemblies, roof-ceiling, FSDG 4.1
 Assessment, hazard, OBUC 2.4
 Associations, BSAR 1.12
 ASTM, ASMM 6.1; DSIG B.4; FRP 3.3, 7.1, 7.5, 7.6, 7.8, E.1; FSDG 3.1, R.1; RSMG C.15
 A167, DSIG B.5
 A653, DSIG C.1
 A666, DSIG B.5
 B209, DSIG B.6
 C581, FRP 3.1, 7.1, B.1, E.1
 C582, FRP 3.1, 7.9, E.1
 D2583, FRP 3.3, 7.9, 8.1, E.1
 D2584, FRP E.1
 D3982, FRP 3.1, 7.9, E.1

 D638, FRP 5.1, 5.5, 6.1, E.1
 D648, FRP D.3
 D790, FRP 5.5
 D883, FRP 7.1
 E662, FRP E.1
 E84, FRP 2.1, 2.2, 2.4, D.3, E.1
 ASTM Standards, DCS A.2; DD 12.6
 ATC, TAB 4.1
 dampers, TAB 4.4
 system adjustment, TAB 4.6

 valves, TAB 4.3
 Atmospheric dust, APP 2.12
 Atomic radiation, DSIG C.2
 Attachment (s), DSIG C.57, C.58, C.59, D.1
 Audit, BSAR 2.10, 2.28, 4.2
 Automatic
 control dampers, TAB 4.3
 control valves, TAB 4.3
 dampers, APP 3.13
 mode switching, APP 3.44
 reset, APP 3.4
 temperature control systems, TAB 4.1
 valves, APP 3.11
 Automatic monitoring device, DSIG 2.2
 Automatic temperature control, See Also ATC dampers
 Automatic Temperature Control (ATC), TAB 12.2; TABPG 2.2
 Auxiliary
 A.W.S., MGW 5.10, 6.2
 air hoods, APP 9.27
 control equipment, APP 3.14
 heat, DEHG 2.1
 switches, APP 3.14
 Auxiliary equipment, FSDG B.3
 Axial fans, DD 6.3, 6.16; TAB 5.2

B

Back-draft dampers, FRP 7.7
 Backshelf, KVS 2.11
 Backward Inclined (BI) Fans, TAB 5.1
 BACnet, ESAM iii, 6.1, 6.2, 6.3
 Baffle(s), RSMG 1.27
 Baffles, condensation, KVS 2.4
 internal, KVS 7.2
 Balance Fittings, TAB 9.6
 Balance Rings, TAB 8.4
 Balancing, BSAR 3.1, 4.3, 4.7, 10.3; ESAM 1.7, 2.4, 2.6, 3.1; IDC 74; TAB 14.13; TABPG 4.13
 criteria, TAB 13.8; TABPG 3.8
 damper locations, DCS 2.15; DD 10.3
 dampers, TAB 6.5
 devices, TAB 12.5; TABPG 2.5
 procedures, TAB 13.3; TABPG 3.3
 proportional method, TAB 13.3; TABPG 3.3
 reports, COM 5.4
 specific systems, TAB 15.5; TABPG 5.5
 Balancing and adjusting, PVC 56
 Bar
 properties, DCS A.10
 Barometer, APP 15.3
 Barrier penetrations, DSIG 1.3
 Baseboard, APP 10.2; TAB 8.14
 Basic duct construction, See Also Duct; DCS 1.3

Basic electricity, TAB 3.1
 Basics of sound, DD 11.3
 Batten seam, ASMM 6.13
 Beaded duct, DCS 1.74
 Bearing supports, DD 6.15
 Bearings, TAB 8.3
 Belt guards, DCS A.35; DD 6.16
 Belt tension, KVS 8.2; TAB 5.10
 Bending Moment, RNDC 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.5, 4.6, 4.8, 5.1, 5.5, 5.6, 5.10, 6.1, 6.7, 6.9, 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.9, 7.10, 7.17, 7.23, 7.24, 7.29, 7.30, 8.3, 9.2, 9.4, 10.2, 10.3, 11.4, 11.7, 11.30, 11.42, 12.40-12.47, 12.54, 12.55, 12.60
 Benzene, IAQ 4.1
 Bernoulli's Theory, KVS 7.2
 Bibliography, GSSC A.5; IDC 95
 Bimetal element, APP 3.9
 Bioaerosols, IAQ 6.9
 Biohazard containment, APP 9.30
 Biological
 material, OBUC 2.2
 safety cabinets, APP 9.28
 Bisphenol A Fumarates, FRP 2.2
 Black iron (steel), DD 12.2
 Blade, TAB 6.9
 effect grilles, DD 3.6
 frequency, DD 11.15
 frequency increments, DD 14.68
 Blade Grilles, Adjustable, TAB 6.12
 Blast Gate, RNDC 15.29
 Bleed type controller, APP 3.18, 3.19
 Board, FGDC 1.1, 2.1
 Board fatigue, DSIG E.1
 BOCA, FSDG R.1
 BOCA National Building Code, FSDG 3.1
 Body heat loss, TAB 6.10
 Boiler conditions, TAB 15.8; TABPG 5.8
 Boiler piping, TAB 9.7
 Boiler(s), APP 2.7, 10.4; RCSI 4.2; TAB 8.13, 12.2, 15.8
 breaching, DCS 2.22

controls, APP 3.32
 hot water, APP 10.6
 maintenance, RCSI 4.9
 nameplate data, RCSI 4.9
 operation, APP 10.5
 steam, APP 10.6
 Boilers, TABPG 2.2, 5.8
 Bolt Material Properties, RNDC 7.11, 7.18, 7.25, 12.61
 Bolt size requirements, GSSC 4.35
 Bolt size table, RCDC 7.62
 Bolt Strength Reduction Factor, RNDC 12.62
 Bolt Stress Area, RNDC 12.63
 Bolted flange connections, RCDC 7.62
 Bolts, RNDC 4.1, 4.3, 4.10, 5.10, 6.10, 7.2, 7.3, 7.11, 7.12, 7.18, 7.25, 7.31, 7.32, 11.55, 12.30, 12.31, 12.33, 12.34, 12.40-12.47, 12.48-12.51, 12.52, 12.54, 12.55, 12.56, 12.58, 12.59-12.80, 13.3, 13.54-13.85, 13.86-13.89, 15.5, 15.6, 15.18, 15.19, 15.34, 16.3, 17.17; SEIS 2.3, 3.1
 BOMA, BSAR 1.11
 Box Rib, LAG 2.18
 Boxed Opening, LAG 3.22
 Braces, RSMG 1.17
 Bracing, SEIS 1.1, 2.1, 2.2, A.1, B.1
 Bracing of Ducts, SEIS 2.2, 3.2, 4.1, 8.1
 Bracing of Pipes, SEIS 2.3, 3.2, 4.1, 8.1, B.1
 Brake Power, TAB 3.7
 Branch, FGDC 4.7
 45-degree entry, DCS 2.8
 connections, DCS 2.8
 duct, KVS 3.1
 supply, DCS 2.2
 takeoffs, DD 3.8
 Branched polyethylene, PVC 66
 Brazing, MGW 2.3
 Breakaway Connection, FSDG 2.1
 Bridle vane anemometer, IDC 88
 British Thermal Unit(s) (BTU), APP 15.3; DD 15.2; TAB 2.1
 Brochures, BSAR 1.8

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



BTU capacity, DEHG 3.1
 Buckstays, LAG 3.52
 Buffer zones, DD 11.1
 Building, See Also Expansion joints
 airflow analysis, APP 9.37
 changes, APP 9.1
 characteristics, BSAR 2.4
 codes/regulations, BSAR 2.17, 5.1; COM 2.1, 3.1, 5.1, 5.3, 7.1, 7.2, 7.4; DD 1.3
 commercial, BSAR 6.5
 envelope, BSAR 2.18
 existing, BSAR 5.4, 5.6
 expansion, ASMM 172
 owners, BSAR 6.1
 pressurization, APP 2.25
 regulations, BSAR 2.17
 static control, APP 7.19
 survey, BSAR 2.7
 walk through, BSAR 2.7, 2.9
 Building automation system (BAS), KVS 2.16
 Building code, KVS 3.2
 Building Compartment Leakage, DSIG 1.3
 Building Height, FSDG F.3
 Building Lighting Levels, ESAM 8.1
 Building materials, RSMG C.6
 Building Openings, FSDG 3.3
 Building permits, KVS 1.2
 Building static control, TAB 14.2; TABPG 4.2
 Buried Duct, FRP 7.8
 Business
 retrofit, BSAR 2.27
 Butt Joint, LAG 3.24; RCDC 8.2
 Butterfly valve, APP 3.12
 Button punched, LAG 3.4
 Buttwelded Seam, RNDC 15.1, 15.2
 Bypass, APP 12.6, 15.3
 damper, APP 3.6
 factors, APP 2.5
 multizone system, APP 4.6
 or dump VAV systems, APP 7.4
 section, APP 2.6
 type VAV system, APP 7.2
 VAV terminals, APP 7.16
 Bypass (Dumping) Boxes, TAB 6.3
 Bypass Type Box, TAB 6.3
 Bypass Valves, TAB 15.4; TABPG 5.4
 Bypass VAV Boxes, TAB 14.11; TABPG 4.11

C

Cabinet(s), FSE 6.2
 Cables, MGW 3.4, 3.5, 4.2; SEIS 3.1, B.1
 Calculating system effects, DD 6.17
 Calibrated balancing valves, TAB 11.25, 15.1; TABPG 5.1
 Calibration, APP 15.3; BSAR 8.8; DD 15.3

Callbacks, COM 3.2
 Canopy, ASMM 7.21; KVS 2.4, 2.5
 Capacity, LTM A.13
 loss, LTM A.12
 Capillary tube, APP 12.4; TAB 10.3
 Capital
 cost(s), BSAR 1.19
 recovery factors, BSAR 1.18
 Capital recovery factors, ESAM 14.10
 Carbon Dioxide, IAQ 8.3, 8.6, E.1
 Carbon Monoxide, IAQ 1.5
 Carbon Steel, DD 12.2; DSIG B.1; RNDC 1.1, 1.3, 1.4, 3.1, 3.3, 3.4, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 5.1, 5.8, 7.2, 7.3, 7.6, 7.27, 7.29, 7.30, 8.1, 8.2, 8.5-8.23, 8.26-8.53, 8.54, 8.55, 9.1, 11.1, 11.2, 11.7, 11.9, 11.12-11.17, 11.20, 11.21, 11.22, 11.23, 11.24-11.27, 11.28, 11.29, 12.1, 12.2, 12.6, 12.16, 12.24, 12.25, 12.26, 12.28, 12.34, 12.36-12.39, 12.40-12.47, 12.52, 12.56, 12.59, 12.61, 12.62, 13.1, 13.2, 13.10, 13.11, 13.16, 13.54-13.81, 14.5, 14.6, 14.7, 15.29, 17.13
 advantages, DSIG B.1
 applications, DSIG B.1
 Carbon Veil, FRP 2.5, 3.4
 Carpets, IAQ 3.8, 10.11
 Casings, DCS 6.2; DSIG C.1, C.71; LAG 1.1
 access doors, DCS 6.15, 6.18
 alternate construction, DCS 6.5
 arrangement, DCS 6.8
 built-up standing seam, DCS 6.3
 construction standards, DCS 6.2
 curb detail, DCS 6.13
 double wall, DCS 6.12
 drain pans, DCS 6.14
 eliminators, DCS 6.14
 inside seam, DCS 6.10
 over 2" w.g., DCS 6.8
 panels, DCS 6.6, 6.9
 pipe penetration, DCS 6.15
 seam, DSIG C.72
 standing seam, DCS 6.4
 Cast iron pipe, SEIS 3.3
 Cast-in-place concrete inserts, SEIS 3.1
 Categories, TAB 6.1
 Caulks, RCSI 10.6; RNDC 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 11.8, 11.31, 11.43, 12.82, 12.83, 16.6
 Ceiling
 assemblies, FSDG 9.1
 branch ducts, DCS 2.19
 contractor, FSDG 11.2
 diffusers, DCS 2.19; TAB 6.8
 floor assembly, FSDG 11.4
 heat stop, FSDG 9.3
 height and clearances, KVS 5.1
 induction boxes, TAB 6.2
 installations, DD 3.12, 3.13

outlet, DD 15.3
 outlet connections, DCS 2.9
 penetration, FSDG 11.4
 return air dumping systems, APP 7.30
 ventilation, DD 3.11
 Ceiling Dampers, FSDG 3.4
 Celsius (formerly Centigrade) scale, APP 15.3; DD 15.3; TAB 2.1
 Central
 control systems, APP 3.8
 plant changeover, APP 3.31
 station, APP 2.7
 station apparatus, DCS A.31
 station units, multizone, APP 4.3
 systems, APP 2.2
 Centralized
 computer-based system, APP 3.40
 control systems, TAB 4.7, 4.9
 control(s), APP 3.8
 Centrifugal
 chillers, APP 10.9
 compressors, APP 11.15, 12.9
 fan shrouds, internal, APP 7.23
 fans, TAB 5.1
 motor arrangements, DCS A.29
 pumps, APP 10.12
 refrigeration, APP 12.8
 Centrifugal Pump(s), TAB 8.1, 8.2, 8.3
 Ceramic tiles, KVS 3.2
 Certification, BSAR 8.16; MGW 9.3
 CFC, ESAM 15.1, 15.2, 15.3
 CFC/HCFC, BSAR 1.1, 8.17; ESAM iii
 CFM, FSDG E.1
 Change Orders, DSIG 2.2
 Changeover, seasonal, APP 3.37
 Channel flanges, RCDC 8.7
 Channel properties, DCS A.10
 Channel reinforcement, DCS 1.33; DSIG E.15
 negative pressure system, DSIG A.2, E.15
 positive pressure system, DSIG E.14
 Channel system reinforcement schedule, DSIG E.12

Characteristics, FGDC 2.1
 Check List, TABPG 2.6
 Checklist(s), DSIG 2.1, 2.4; TAB 12.6
 and building condition, KVS 5.1
 combination damper, FSDG 7.6
 duct systems, DSIG 2.3
 fibrous glass, DSIG 2.4
 flexible duct, DSIG 2.3
 functional performance, COM 1.1, 6.2, 6.3, 7.4-7.6, D.1
 general, DSIG 2.4
 IAQ inspection, OBUC A.9
 miscellaneous, DSIG 2.3
 planning, OBUC A.2
 pre-start, COM 1.1, 6.1, 6.2, 7.3-7.5, 9.2, 9.6, B.1, C.1
 special conditions, DSIG 2.2
 start-up, COM 6.1, 6.2, 7.3-7.5, 9.2, 9.6, B.1, C.1
 Chemical, IAQ 11.4
 dehumidifier, APP 3.27
 oxidation, APP 2.21
 Problems, IAQ 3.8
 Chilled Water System (CW), APP 10.18; ESAM 1.7, 2.2, 4.1; TAB 9.1
 coil control, APP 3.25
 Chillers, APP 10.6; BSAR 8.14; ESAM 1.6, 4.7, 4.8, 4.9, 5.10, 5.11, 5.13, 5.14, 5.15, 5.16, 6.3, 9.1, 10.6, 10.11, 11.1, 12.1, 15.1, 15.2, 15.3, 17.1, 17.6, 21.3, 21.4, 21.5
 absorption, APP 2.8, 12.11
 centrifugal, APP 10.9
 flooded, APP 10.10
 heat recovery, APP 13.2
 operation, IAQ 4.3
 parallel, APP 10.7
 series, APP 10.8
 optimization, APP 3.43
 reciprocating, APP 10.8
 screw compressor, APP 10.11
 Chimneys, RCSI 10.1; RSMG 3.1

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- areas, RCSI 10.2
- metal pipe, RCSI 10.1
- towers (hyperbolic), APP 12.16
- Chlorendic anhydride, FRP 2.1
- Chlorine, FRP 2.4
- Chopped strand mat, FRP 2.5, 3.1, 7.1, B.1, D.1, D.2, D.3, D.5
- Chronometric, TAB 11.12
- Chutes
 - linen, ASMM 8.44
 - trash, ASMM 8.44
- Circles
 - area, DCS A.9
 - circumference, DCS A.9
 - diameter, DCS A.9
- Circular equivalent(s), DD 5.12, 6.8, 14.10, 14.14; TAB 2.23
- Circumference table, DCS A.11; IDC 84
- Cladding, LAG 1.1; RNDC 1.1, 4.1, 4.3, 4.11, 5.1, 5.2, 6.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.5, 7.8, 7.13, 7.16, 7.20, 7.23, 7.27, 7.33, 8.2, 8.3, 8.5, 8.24, 8.25, 8.54, 9.3, 9.5, 9.34, 10.3, 10.5, 11.9, 11.33, 11.45, 12.4, 12.13, 13.16, 13.54-13.85, 17.3, 17.6, 17.8, 17.10, 17.12, 17.14, 17.15, B.7
- Class, FGDC 2.2
- Class I air duct rating, DSIG E.2
- Class I cabinets, APP 9.29
- Class II cabinets, APP 9.29
- Class III cabinets, APP 9.30
- Classes of clean room, See Also Clean room; APP 9.3
- Classification, Source, IAQ 7.1
- Clean room, APP 9.1; BSAR 3.17
 - air pressure relationship, APP 9.8
 - airflow, APP 9.3
 - class 10, APP 9.10
 - class 10, 000, APP 9.12
 - class 100, APP 9.11
 - control systems, APP 9.7
 - design, APP 9.5
 - filtration, APP 9.5
 - HVAC ductwork, APP 9.8
 - HVAC systems, APP 9.1
 - standards, APP 9.13
 - temperature and humidity, APP 9.8
 - testing, APP 9.13
- Cleaning, BSAR 8.9; IAQ 3.1, 3.7, 7.2, 8.6, 10.11
 - chemical, IAQ 11.4
 - safety, IAQ 10.6
- Cleaning and maintenance, KVS 2.13
- Cleanliness, air, APP 1.5
- Cleanout doors, See Access Doors; IDC 60
- Clean-up, FRP 4.4
- Clearance, DEHG 3.2
- Clearance requirements, KVS 5.5

- Clearances - to-combustible, KVS 3.3
- Cleat(s), RSMG 1.17
- Clients, BSAR 1.11
- Climate
 - closed-circuit fluid coolers, APP 12.17
- Closed loop control, APP 7.19; TAB 14.2; TABPG 4.2
 - systems, APP 3.2, 11.8; TAB 9.8
- Closed system curve, TAB 8.7
- Closed system(s), APP 10.14; TAB 2.27
- Closing, BSAR 1.11, 2.26
- Closure, FGDC 2.1
- Closure panels, KVS 6.4
- Closure strip, LAG 3.29
- Closures, See Also Joint and Seam Preparation; ASMM 8.34; DSIG 2.5, E.3-E.5; FGDC 3.2, 3.4, 3.5
 - general, DSIG E.2
 - notes, DSIG E.3
- Coanda effect, DD 3.5; TAB 6.8
- Cobalt Naphthenate, FRP 2.2, 2.3
- Cobalt Octoate, FRP 2.2
- Code
 - local, FSDG 3.3
 - officials, FSDG 3.3, 4.1
- Code and ordinances, DD 1.2
- Code Authorities, FSDG 3.1
 - local, FSDG 3.1
 - state, FSDG 3.1
- Code requirements, FSDG 3.1; KVS 3.1, 4.1, 5.1
- Codes, BSAR 5.1; DD 1.3; DSIG 1.3, B.1, C.3; IAQ 9.3; IDC 3; KVS 1.3; MGW 6.2, 6.3
 - air quality, IDC 3
 - building, DSIG A.1
 - duct construction, DCS v; IDC 3
 - fire and smoke, DD 1.3
 - HVAC system, DD 1.2
 - mechanical, DSIG 1.3
- Coefficient of
 - discharge, DD 15.3
 - expansion, DD 15.3
 - flow, APP 3.5
 - heat pump, DD 15.3
 - negative loss, DD 5.13
 - performance (COP), ESAM 4.8, 4.9
- Coils, ESAM 1.7; TAB 15.6; TABPG 5.6
- Coils/terminal units
 - bypass factors, APP 2.5
 - direct expansion, APP 12.4
 - dry expansion, APP 12.3
 - ducted, DCS 2.11
 - electric, APP 3.24
 - elements, DEHG 1.1
 - enclosed, DEHG 1.1
 - heating and cooling, DD 9.8

hydronic, APP 3.23
 open, DEHG 1.1
 reheat, APP 2.4
 sheath, DEHG 1.1
 Cold
 calling, BSAR 1.9
 Cold-formed angles, DCS 1.33; SEIS 3.1
 Cold-rolled Steel, RNDC 3.1, 3.4, 3.12, 3.13, 8.1,
 8.26-8.53, 8.54, 11.10-11.11, 12.24, 17.13
 Collection devices, KVS 4.3
 Colloidal Suspension, FRP 2.4
 Color Stability, FRP 2.2
 Column covers, ASMM 8.28
 Columns (Pipe), RNDC 13.50, 13.51
 Combination
 piping systems, APP 10.21
 Combination Boxes, TAB 6.3
 Combination Changes, TAB 2.12
 Combination Fire Smoke Damper, FSDG 5.2, 5.3
 out of wall, FSDG 5.10
 Combination Piping Systems, TAB 9.3
 Combination Systems, TAB 14.12; TABPG 4.12
 Combining sound pressure levels, DD 11.4
 Combustibles, KVS 3.3
 Combustion, IAQ 3.9
 air, RCSI 2.8, 10.3
 equipment
 confined, RCSI 10.3
 unconfined, RCSI 10.5
 outdoor, RCSI 10.5
 products, OBUC 2.2
 Comfort, BSAR 5.4; DD 2.2, 3.1; IAQ 1.2, 1.3, 1.4
 chart, DD 15.3
 conditioning, DD 3.1
 cooling, DD 15.3
 criteria, DD 3.1
 zone, DD 15.3; TAB 6.6
 Commissioning
 acceptance phase, COM 5.2, 7.1, 7.4-7.6, 9.6
 acceptance procedures, COM 7.3

authority, COM 1.1, 2.2, 3.4, 4.1, 4.2, 5.1, 5.3,
 5.4, 7.1-7.6, 8.1, 9.6
 benefits, COM 3.1, 3.2, 5.2, 6.3
 comprehensive, COM 2.2, 5.2, 5.3, 7.1
 construction phase, BSAR 5.6; COM 1.1, 4.1,
 4.2, 7.1, 7.3, 7.5, 7.6
 contractors, COM 2.2, 3.2, 3.4, 5.2
 costs, COM 2.1, 5.3, 5.4, 9.1-9.3, 9.5, 9.6
 criteria, COM 3.1, 7.1, 7.2, 8.1, 9.1, 9.4, 9.5
 designers, COM 3.4
 duties, COM 4.1, 4.16.1-6.3
 owners, COM 1.1, 3.1-3.4, 5.3, 8.1, 9.5
 qualifications, COM 4.1, 4.2, 5.3, 7.2
 recommissioning, COM 3.3, 5.4, 9.6
 responsibilities, COM 2.2, 4.1, 7.2, 7.3
 Commissioning demonstration, COM 3.4, 5.2, 6.3,
 7.1, 7.3-7.7
 deferred, COM 6.3
 event matrix, COM 7.2
 functional program, COM 7.1
 instruction, COM 2.1, 3.4, 5.2, 6.3, 6.4, 7.3-7.6,
 9.6
 levels, BSAR 5.2; COM 1.1, 2.2, 3.1, 3.3, 3.4,
 4.2, 5.2-5.4, 6.3, 7.1, 8.1, 9.2, 9.6
 maintenance, BSAR 8.9
 manual, BSAR 8.4
 meetings, COM 7.4-7.6
 organization, COM 5.1, 8.1
 performance tests, COM 1.1, 3.2, 4.2, 5.3,
 6.1-6.3, 7.3-7.6, 8.1, 9.1
 performance verification, COM 3.1, 3.4,
 7.3-7.6, 8.1, 9.2, 9.6
 plan, COM 1.1, 3.2, 4.1, 5.3, 6.2, 7.2-7.6, 9.2,
 9.6
 procedures, COM 2.2, 5.2, 6.1-6.4, 7.1, 7.2, 8.1
 process, COM 1.1, 2.1, 2.2, 3.1-3.4, 4.1, 4.2,
 5.1-5.4, 6.2, 7.1, 7.3-7.6, 8.1, 9.1, 9.4-9.6
 program document, COM 7.1, 7.2
 program phase, COM 3.1
 reference documents, COM 2.2, 7.3

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- responsibilities, COM 2.1, 2.2, 3.2, 4.1, 4.2, 5.1-5.3, 6.1-6.3, 7.1-7.3, 7.6
- schedule, COM A.1
- scope, COM 1.1, 2.2, 7.1-7.3, 8.1, 9.1, 9.2, 9.5
- seasonal, COM 6.3
- specification, COM 2.2, 7.2-7.4, 8.1
- team, COM 4.1, 7.2-7.4
- team members, COM 4.2, 7.2-7.4
- tests, COM 1.1, 1.2, 3.1, 3.4, 4.1, 5.1, 5.3, 6.1-6.3, 7.2-7.6, 8.1, 9.1, 9.2, 9.5, 9.6
- time requirement, COM 3.3, 3.4, 6.2, 7.2
- verification criteria, COM 5.1
- Common sense, IAQ 9.2
- Communication, BSAR 1.2, 3.2; IAQ 9.1, 9.3
 - devices, TAB 11.23
 - technology, TAB 11.23
 - terminals, TAB 11.24
- Comparative vibration of duct gauges, DCS 7.17
- Complaints
 - form, IAQ A.14
 - management climate, IAQ 1.4
 - perceived conditions, IAQ 1.3
 - physiological strain, IAQ 1.4
 - response, OBUC 6.1
 - temperature, IAQ 2.2
- Complex stairwell pressurization, APP 9.39
- Component losses, DD 5.1
- Component Testing, FSDG D.1, F.3
 - caution, FSDG D.2
- Components, BSAR 8.9; KVS 3.4
 - accessory, KVS 6.5
 - and operation, KVS 8.1
 - and system equipment, KVS 6.4
 - deterioration of, KVS 8.1
 - kitchen ventilation, KVS 3.4
- Composite material, FRP 1.1, 6.9
- Compounds, organic, OBUC 2.2
- Compressibility, TAB 2.19
- Compression tank, APP 10.16; RCSI 4.7
- Compressor, APP 2.8; TAB 9.12, 10.3
 - centrifugal, APP 11.15, 12.9
 - helical rotary, APP 10.10, 12.6
 - hermetic, APP 12.5
 - open, APP 12.5
 - reciprocating, APP 11.15, 12.5
 - rotary, APP 11.16, 12.5
 - screw, APP 12.6
 - semi-hermetic, APP 12.5
- Compressor Short Cycling, TAB 10.3, 10.6
- Computer, BSAR 2.9, 2.13, 2.14, 2.20; TAB 11.24, 11.24
 - control systems, APP 3.9
 - definitions, APP 3.39
 - facilities, BSAR 2.20
- Concentrator, APP 12.13

- Concrete, DD 12.6; KVS 3.2
 - slab, DCS 4.3
- Condensate hoods, KVS 2.4
- Condensation, TAB 2.9
- Condenser, APP 12.7; TAB 10.3
 - air cooled, APP 12.8
 - double tube, APP 12.7
 - double-pipe, APP 12.7
 - shell and coil, APP 12.7
 - shell and tube, APP 12.7
 - water cooled, APP 12.7
 - water systems, APP 10.28; TAB 9.12, 15.7
- Condensers, TABPG 5.7
- Condensing units, DD 15.4
 - refrigerant, DD 15.4
- Condition changes, TAB 2.11
- Conditions, FGDC 2.1
- Conductance (C), TAB 2.4
- Conductivity (k), TAB 2.4
- Conductivity, thermal, DD 15.4
- Conical roofs, ASMM 6.50
- Connection, FSDG 5.2, 5.4
 - breakaway, FSDG 5.6
 - duct to sleeve, FSDG 5.1, 5.3, 5.5
- Connection in parallel, DD 15.4
- Connection in series, DD 15.4
- Connection levels, SEIS 2.1, 2.2
- Connection types, SEIS 2.3
- Connections, See Also Fabrication of fittings; FGDC 4.11, 5.13; IDC 15; RCDC 8.1
 - beaded sleeve, IDC 16
 - butt welded, IDC 16
 - draw band, IDC 16
 - flanged, RNDC 5.1, 6.1, 7.7, 7.8, 7.15, 7.21, 7.22, 11.5, 11.12-11.15, 11.24-11.27, 11.36-11.39, 11.48-11.51, 12.28-12.34, 12.60, 15.5, 16.6, 17.7
 - flexible, IDC 21
 - rectangular, IDC 17
 - riveted, IDC 16
 - round, IDC 17
 - van stone, IDC 18
- Constant
 - mass flow, TAB 5.16
 - volume, TAB 5.14
- Constant airflow, TAB 6.1
- Constant Fan VAV Box, TAB 14.12; TABPG 4.12
- Constant return volume air fan, APP 2.27
- Constant velocity method, DD 4.4
- Constant volume system, APP 2.27, 10.23; TAB 14.14
- Constant Volume Systems, TABPG 4.14
- Construction, See Materials, See Louvers; ASMM 7.270
 - assembly and fitup, GSSC 5.1



bolted connections, GSSC 5.1
 erection, GSSC 5.1
 fabrication and installation, GSSC 5.1
 Guidelines (EPA), IAQ C.2
 managing process (IAQ), OBUC 4.1
 sampling facilities, GSSC 5.2
 standards, PVC 3
 welding, GSSC 5.1
 Construction and installation, KVS 1.1
 Contact Molding, FRP 5.1, 5.9, 6.1, 7.1, D.3, D.6
 Containment, biohazard, APP 9.30
 Contaminant(s), BSAR 6.1; ESAM 2.1, 5.8, 9.2,
 18.3, 18.4, 18.5, 18.14, 18.15, 18.16, 19.2; IAQ 3.3,
 10.11
 building materials, IAQ E.2
 carcinogenic, IAQ 2.1
 chemical, IAQ 3.1, 3.8
 cleaning products, IAQ 3.9
 common List, IAQ E.3
 control, APP 9.9
 exposure, OBUC 2.5
 gaseous, IAQ 2.1, 5.1
 health problems, types of, OBUC 2.5
 HVAC Source, IAQ 3.1
 impact on building occupants, OBUC 2.5
 microbial, IAQ 2.1, 3.1, 3.7, 4.1, 5.2
 movement, OBUC 2.3
 occupancy, IAQ 6.11
 organic, IAQ 5.1; OBUC 2.2
 OSHA standards, OBUC 2.6
 other, OBUC 2.3
 particulate, IAQ 2.1; OBUC 2.2
 radon, IAQ 2.1
 sources, OBUC 2.1
 synergy, IAQ 5.1
 vehicle exhaust, IAQ 6.11
 Contamination
 chemical, IAQ 7.2
 microbial, IAQ 7.2
 Continuous strand roving, FRP 2.5, 3.1
 Contract documents, TAB 12.1; TABPG 2.1

Contract services, IAQ 9.1
 Contractor
 responsibilities, LTM 2.1
 Contracts, BSAR 8.10
 Control, TAB 4.1
 categories, TAB 4.2
 devices, TAB 4.3
 diagrams, TAB 4.5
 loops, TAB 4.2
 relationships, TAB 4.5
 Control components, RCSI 9.1
 space heating, RCSI 9.1
 thermostat, RCSI 9.1
 Control measures (IAQ), OBUC 3.1
 depressurizing work area, OBUC 3.3
 erecting barriers, OBUC 3.4
 identifying, OBUC 4.2
 pathway interruption, OBUC 3.3
 pressurizing occupied space, OBUC 3.3
 relocating pollutant sources, OBUC 3.4
 selecting, OBUC 4.3
 temporarily sealing building, OBUC 3.4
 work practices, OBUC 5.1
 Control strategies, IAQ 1.5, 4.3
 Control system, BSAR 2.22; COM 1.2, 2.1, 3.1, 3.2,
 3.4; IAQ 3.1; RCSI 9.2
 (EMCS), energy management, APP 3.40
 actions, APP 3.2
 agent, APP 3.1
 airflow, APP 3.6
 and wiring systems applications, APP 3.20
 basics, APP 3.1
 calibration, COM 6.3, 7.5
 chilled water coil, APP 3.25
 clean room, APP 9.7
 clock control, RCSI 9.2
 closed loop, APP 7.19
 components, APP 3.9
 contamination, APP 9.9
 cooling/humidity control, APP 3.25
 cycle warm-up/cool-down, APP 3.22

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



dampers, DCS 2.15
 dead band, APP 3.37
 defrost, APP 11.16
 demand load controller, RCSI 9.2
 design, APP 3.36
 direct digital (DDC), APP 3.45
 direct expansion coil, APP 3.26
 dual duct, APP 5.8
 electric heat, APP 3.33
 enthalpy, APP 3.21
 equipment auxiliary, APP 3.14
 evaporative cooling, APP 3.27
 face & bypass, APP 3.6
 fan volume, APP 3.29
 floating, APP 3.10
 fluid flow, APP 3.5
 gas-fired, APP 3.35
 heat exchanger, APP 3.33
 heating coil, APP 3.23
 humidity, RCSI 9.2
 hydronic, APP 3.4
 hydronic heating system, APP 3.32
 hydronic-zone, APP 3.33
 IAQ, selecting, OBUC 4.1
 induction, APP 8.10
 inlet vane, APP 7.21
 interlock relays, RCS 9.2
 lighting, APP 3.44
 local, APP 3.8
 localized, APP 3.8
 loops, APP 3.2
 mixed air, APP 3.6
 multizone, APP 4.5
 open loop, APP 3.2, 7.19
 optimum start/stop, RCSI 9.2
 outdoor air, APP 3.20
 pneumatic, APP 3.15
 point, APP 3.3
 preheat coil, APP 3.23
 pressurization, APP 2.25
 proportional, APP 3.3, 3.10
 refrigeration system, APP 3.35
 safety, COM 6.1, 6.2
 sequence of, COM 6.1, 6.2, 9.6
 sequences, COM 6.3
 smoke, APP 9.35
 static pressure, APP 3.20, 3.28, 7.30
 systems, COM 6.3, 7.2, 9.5
 temperature control problems, COM 1.1, 3.3, 9.5
 terminal reheat, APP 6.4
 three-way valve, APP 3.31
 two-position, APP 3.10
 types, APP 3.8
 valves, differential pressure, APP 10.24

VAV, APP 7.30
 VAV fan air volume, APP 7.18
 VAV fan volume control, APP 7.20
 VAV static pressure, APP 7.19
 zone, APP 3.29
 Control verification, TAB 13.3; TABPG 3.3
 Controlled
 area, APP 3.36
 device, APP 3.1, 3.11
 variable, APP 3.2; TAB 4.3
 Controller, APP 3.10
 boiler, APP 3.32
 cooling tower, APP 12.17
 differential, APP 3.3
 electric, APP 3.14
 liquid chiller, APP 10.11
 non bleed, APP 3.18
 pilot-bleed type, APP 3.18
 pneumatic, APP 3.10, 3.14
 pressure differential, APP 3.31
 reverse-acting, APP 3.10
 space, APP 3.36
 step, APP 3.14
 temperature setback, APP 3.37
 variable frequency AC motor speed, APP 7.23
 Controls, TAB 4.6
 Convectors, APP 10.2; TAB 8.14
 Conventional-low density, PVC 66
 Conversion, IAQ B.2
 of load units, RCDC 4.2
 of steel tables to aluminum, DCS 1.31
 Converters, APP 10.11
 Cooking, FSDG B.1; IAQ 4.4
 Cooling, BSAR 8.5; ESAM 1.1, 1.3, 1.6, 1.7, 1.8, 1.9, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5, 2.6, 2.7, 2.8, 2.9, 2.10, 3.1, 3.2, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.4, 4.5, 4.6, 4.7, 4.8, 4.9, 5.2, 5.7, 5.8, 5.9, 5.10, 5.13, 5.14, 5.15, 5.16, 8.1, 8.3, 8.7, 9.1, 9.2, 10.1, 10.5, 10.6, 10.8, 10.10, 11.1, 11.2, 13.4, 13.5, 13.6, 13.7, 14.1, 15.1, 15.2, 15.3, 16.16, 16.17, 16.18, 16.20, 16.21, 17.2, 17.6, 17.7, 17.14, 18.1, 18.12, 18.13, 18.15, 18.16, 20.1, 20.3, 20.4, 20.5, 21.1, 21.3, 21.5; TAB 2.12
 coil charts, DD 9.8, 9.9
 counterflow airstreams, TAB 2.3
 equipment, APP 2.8; RCSI 4.1
 evaporative, DD 15.6
 load, APP 4.4
 section, APP 2.6
 size, RCSI 2.13
 tower systems, TAB 9.12
 Cooling Coils, IAQ 3.7, 6.10, 10.5
 Cooling Mode, TAB 15.11; TABPG 5.11
 Cooling Systems, TAB 15.9; TABPG 5.9
 Cooling towers, APP 2.9; IAQ 3.7, 6.9; TAB 8.8
 approach, APP 12.14



controls, APP 12.17
 direct contact, APP 12.15
 piping systems, APP 10.29
 systems, APP 10.29, 12.14
 thermal capacity, APP 12.15
 thermal performance, APP 12.14
 types of, APP 12.15

Coping(s)
 curved, ASMM 3.9
 design data, ASMM 3.1
 extruded, ASMM 3.20
 flashing, ASMM 3.12
 formed, ASMM 3.2, 3.3, 3.8, 3.14
 joints, ASMM 3.14
 limits, ASMM 3.4
 locks, ASMM 3.5
 seams, ASMM 3.6
 walls
 dual, ASMM 3.16
 parapet, ASMM 3.18

Copper, MGW 2.23; RSMG B.2, C.2, C.8, C.9

Core area, DD 15.4
 face area, DD 15.4

Corner closures, DCS 1.50; LAG 3.29
 box lock, DCS 1.51
 flanges, DCS 1.52
 government lock, DCS 1.51
 inside slip joint, DCS 1.55
 pocket locks, DCS 1.51
 slip and drives, DCS 1.50
 standing seams, DCS 1.54

Corner construction, LAG 3.31

Corner guards, ASMM 8.30

Cornerstone boxes, ASMM 8.26

Cornice, RSMG 4.7

Cornices, ASMM 8.18, 8.20

Correction
 receiver room(sound), DD 11.43

Correction Factor Table, TAB 2.8

Correction factors, APP 14.19
 air density, DD 14.18, 14.57, 14.61

friction loss, DD 14.9

Correlation of work, PVC 50
 access, PVC 51
 cutting and patching, PVC 50
 electrical, PVC 50
 equipment foundations, PVC 51
 openings, PVC 50
 other contractors, PVC 50
 permits and licenses, PVC 51
 piping, PVC 4
 scaffolding, PVC 50
 taxes, PVC 51
 utilities, PVC 51

Corrosion, IDC 38; RNDC 1.2, 2.1, 3.2, 3.6, 3.7, 3.14, 3.15, 3.16, 4.6, 5.5, 9.34, 13.2, 15.27, 16.6
 allowance, FRP B.1
 barrier, FRP 3.1, 3.3, 7.1, A.7, A.9, B.1, D.2, D.5
 characteristics, PVC 77
 corrosion control, FRP 1.1, 2.5
 galvanic, ASMM 9.13
 material comparison, PVC 72
 operating temperature, PVC 73
 resistance, FRP 1.1, 2.1, 2.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.1, 7.7; PVC 71
 room temperature, PVC 72

Corrosive(s), DD 15.4
 compounds vs. PVC material, PVC 72, 77
 vapors, DD 13.1

Corrosiveness, FGDC 2.1

Cost(s), See Also Estimating; DD 2.1; MGW 8.1
 annual, DD 2.1
 controlling, DD 2.3
 fittings, DD 2.6
 initial, DD 2.1
 installation, APP 1.2
 operating, APP 1.2; DD 2.1
 relative installed, DD 2.5
 system, APP 1.2
 variables, DD 2.1

Costing, BSAR 1.21, 1.22, 6.6

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Counteraction (odors), APP 2.22
 Counterflow, DD 15.4
 Counters, FSE 6.1
 Counting, particle, APP 9.13
 Cover letter, BSAR 1.10
 Cover plate, RSMG 1.15
 Covering materials (sound), DD 11.30
 Covers, ASMM 7.11
 Criteria for PVC duct reinforcement
 rectangular duct, negative pressure, PVC xii
 rectangular duct, positive pressure, PVC xiv
 round duct, negative pressure, PVC xi
 round duct, positive pressure, PVC xii
 tables, PVC xi
 Critical applications, COM 8.1
 Critical load, RCDC 4.3
 Cross contamination, ESAM 17.11, 18.2, 18.5,
 18.11, 18.15, 19.2, 20.2, 20.3
 Crossbracing, FSE 2.6
 table undershelf, FSE 2.7
 Crossbroken duct, DCS 1.45
 Cross-Flow Airstreams, TAB 2.4
 Crosstab, FGDC 3.4
 Cubicles, IAQ 4.3
 Curbs, KVS 6.2
 Current
 alternating, MGW 2.5
 welding, MGW 2.17, 6.4
 Curtain(s)
 draft or fire, ASMM 8.16
 Curves, pump, APP 10.14
 Curves, system, APP 10.14
 Customer, BSAR 1.4, 1.11, 8.17
 Cut Edges, FRP 7.1
 Cycle, DD 15.4
 Cylinders, MGW 4.4
 Cylindrical Duct (Round Duct), FRP C.1
 D1.3, MGW 6.2
 D9.1, MGW 6.2

D

Dalton's Law of Partial Pressure, DD 15.4
 Damage, KVS 4.1
 roof and building, KVS 4.1
 Damper
 Operator, FGDC 6.8
 Volume, FGDC 6.8
 Damper adjustments, TAB 13.7; TABPG 3.6
 Damper Attachment, FSDG 5.1
 sleeve, FSDG 5.2, 5.3
 Damper check, TAB 13.1; TABPG 3.1
 Damper Orientation, FSDG 5.1
 Damper setting, TAB 13.1; TABPG 3.1
 Damper Styles, FSDG 7.2
 Damper Types, FSDG 7.1

combination, FSDG 7.4
 curtain, FSDG 7.1
 horizontal, FSDG 11.2
 smoke, FSDG 7.3
 Damper(s), See Also specific damper types; APP
 3.6, 3.6; DCS 2.16; DD 9.1, 9.6, 13.3; FRP 7.3, 7.6,
 7.7, 9.2, 9.6, 9.7; IDC 68; KVS 3.1; PVC 21; RCSI
 7.4, 10.3; RNDC 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 11.8, 11.31, 11.43,
 15.27, 15.31, 15.32, 16.2, 16.7; TAB 12.6
 and water-wash hood, KVS 6.3
 automatic, APP 3.13
 back-draft, PVC 21, 43; RCSI 7.4
 blade locking device, PVC 42
 bypass, APP 3.6
 characteristics, APP 3.7
 definition, KVS 2.13
 fire, PVC 21, 54
 leakage, APP 3.38
 locations, DD 10.3; PVC 53
 louver mixing, APP 3.13
 minimum outdoor air, APP 3.20
 modulating, APP 3.6
 multiblade, DCS 2.17
 operator, TAB 4.5
 opposed blade, APP 3.7; DCS 2.17
 outdoor air, APP 3.20
 parallel blade, APP 3.7
 problems, IAQ 4.2
 radiation, FSDG 9.2
 shop fabricated, DD 9.4
 single-blade, APP 3.13; DCS 2.16
 smoke, APP 9.43
 sound, DD 11.13
 tests, DD 5.2
 two-position, APP 3.7
 volume, PVC 21, 41; RCSI 7.4
 Dampers, TABPG 2.6
 Dander, IAQ 3.7
 Data label, TAB 13.8; TABPG 3.8
 Data, Recording, TAB 13.3; TABPG 3.3
 Database, BSAR 2.10
 Day-night thermostat, APP 3.11
 DC motors, APP 7.23
 DDC, See Direct digital control
 Dead band control, APP 3.37
 Dead Loads, RNDC 4.2, 4.4, 4.5, 4.9, 4.11, 5.1, 5.2,
 5.5, 5.11, 6.6, 7.3
 Decay rate, DD 15.5
 Decibels (dB), DD 11.2
 combining, DD 11.2
 Deck, ASMM 6.6
 Deck discharge control, APP 5.9
 Deck(s), RSMG 2.1
 plank, RSMG 2.5
 surface, RSMG 2.3

Definition, MGW 8.2, 11.1
 Deflection, FGDC 2.1
 Defrost control, APP 11.16
 Degree days, DD 15.5; ESAM 13.5
 Degree of saturation, TAB 2.9
 Dehumidification, DD 15.5; ESAM 4.7, 5.7, 16.16, 16.17; TAB 2.12
 reset, APP 3.30
 Delamination, FRP 3.3, 7.1, D.2
 Demographic, IAQ 1.1
 Demonstrating, COM 5.2, 6.3, 7.1, 7.3-7.7, 8.1
 Density, DD 5.4; TAB 5.14
 change, TAB 5.16, 5.18
 measuring, TAB 13.12
 Density effect, DD 5.5
 Density, Measuring, TABPG 3.12
 Dependent-Independent Boxes, TAB 6.3
 Derated coils, DEHG 3.2
 Desiccants, dehumidification, APP 9.15, 9.17
 Design, ASMM 1.51; GSSC 3.1; KVS 1.1, 2.11, 5.1; MGW 5.2
 comparisons, DD 7.22, 8.22
 concepts, COM 7.2
 conditions, DD 3.3
 criteria, COM 3.1
 details, typical (figure), GSSC 3.6
 fundamentals, DD 7.1, 8.1
 hydronic, APP 10.27
 intent, COM 2.1, 3.1, 3.2, 6.1, 6.3, 7.1, 7.2
 ladder installation, GSSC 3.3
 limitations, GSSC 3.1, 6.1
 methods, DD 4.3
 objectives, DD 7.1, 8.1
 openings, stack, GSSC 3.5
 reinforcement, GSSC 6.5
 reinforcement (figure), GSSC 3.8, 6.6
 phase, COM 4.1, 5.3, 7.1, 7.2
 point, DD 5.3
 procedures, DD 3.4, 7.2, 7.15, 8.2, 8.15
 professional, SEIS 1.1, 2.1, A.1, B.1
 requirements, FRP 7.2

responsibilities, LTM 2.1
 space, APP 1.4
 system, DD 10.5
 temperatures
 difference, RCSI 2.2
 velocity, DD 9.14
 working pressure, DD 15.5
 Design airflow volume, TAB 5.19
 Design Fire, FSDG F.1
 Design for Bending, RNDC 4.6, 5.5, 6.1, 7.15, 7.22, 7.29, 11.4
 Design for Negative Pressure, RNDC 4.7, 5.7
 Design for Positive Pressure, RNDC 4.6, 5.6
 Design of Bolts for Flanged Joints, RNDC 4.8, 5.9
 Design of Circumferential Stiffeners, RNDC 4.7
 Design of Flanged Joints, RNDC 4.8, 5.9
 Design Pressure, RNDC 1.1, 4.4, 4.10, 5.2, 7.5, 7.13, 7.20, 7.27, 7.32, 8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.25, 8.54, 8.55, 9.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.3, 9.4, 9.34, 9.35, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, 10.34, 10.35, 11.1, 11.2, 11.7, 11.8, 11.18, 11.30, 11.31, 11.42, 11.43, 11.54, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 12.13, 12.17, 12.22, 12.23, 12.28, 12.60, 13.16, 17.5, 17.9
 Design Range, TAB 9.9
 Design Temperature, RNDC 1.1, 7.5, 7.13, 7.14, 7.15, 7.20, 7.22, 7.24, 7.27, 8.1, 8.3, 8.25, 8.54, 8.55, 9.1, 9.3, 9.34, 9.35, 9.36, 10.1, 10.3, 10.34, 10.35, 11.1, 11.7, 11.8, 11.18, 11.31, 11.42, 11.43, 11.54, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 12.12, 12.13, 12.16, 12.17, 12.22, 12.23, 12.25, 12.52, 12.56, 12.59, 12.60, 12.62, 13.16, 17.5, 17.9, 17.15
 Details
 backsplash, FSE 2.4
 edge, FSE 2.3
 Deviation, APP 3.4
 Dew Point, TAB 2.8
 temperature, TAB 2.11
 apparatus, DD 15.5
 Dial Thermometers, TAB 11.17
 Differential, APP 3.19; DD 15.5
 controller, APP 3.3

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- diffusional effects, APP 2.14
- operating, APP 3.3
- pressure control valve, APP 10.24
- pressure element, APP 3.9
- pressure switch, DEHG 6.1
- Diffuse sound field, DD 15.5
- Diffuser, FGDC 4.13
- Diffusers, See Also Fabrication of fittings; DD 3.15
 - air, DD 15.5
 - air-light, TAB 6.13
 - ceiling, TAB 6.14
 - connections, DCS 2.19
 - mounted thermostats, APP 3.36
 - multi-passage ceiling, TAB 6.13
 - perforated face ceiling, TAB 6.13
 - room, DD 11.8
 - slot, TAB 6.13
 - variable area ceiling, TAB 6.13
- Diffusional effects, APP 2.14
- Digital Controllers, TAB 11.23
- Digital in (DI), APP 3.45; TAB 4.8
- Digital out (DO), APP 3.45; TAB 4.8
- Diocetyl phthalate (DOP) method, APP 9.5
- Direct
 - acting, TAB 4.2, 4.3
 - acting controllers, APP 3.10
 - contact cooling tower, APP 12.15
 - control, APP 3.26
 - digital control (DDC), TAB 4.1, 4.10
 - expansion coil, APP 12.4
 - field, DD 15.5
 - fired units, APP 3.35
 - return system, TAB 9.3
- Direct digital control, APP 3.45
 - interface, APP 3.46
 - operation, APP 3.45
- Direct-Return, TAB 15.5; TABPG 5.5
- Discharge ducts, IDC 9
- Discharge stop valve, TAB 10.3
- Discount rate, ESAM 23.2, 23.7, 23.8, 23.10, 23.11, 23.13
- Dishtable, details of, FSE 9.3
- Dishwasher
 - vapor exhaust, DCS 2.22
- Dishwasher system, KVS 2.4
- Dispersion, FRP 2.4
- Display unit, FSE 7.1
- Dissimilar metals, ASMM 9.13
- Distributed processing systems, APP 3.42
- District Heating Systems, TAB 9.14
- District stream, APP 2.8
- Diversified Pressure Dependent Systems, TABPG 4.6
- Diversified Pressure Dependent Systems, TAB 14.6
- Diversity, APP 7.26
- Diversity factor, TAB 14.1; TABPG 4.1

- Diversity Systems, TAB 14.5; TABPG 4.5
- Diverted flow section, DD 5.18
- Diverter, ASMM 1.51
- Diverting valve(s), APP 10.24; TAB 4.3
 - three-way, APP 3.13, 3.17
- Divided-flow fittings, DCS 2.7; DD 5.17
- DMA, FRP 2.3, 2.4
- Documentation, COM 1.1, 2.1, 3.1, 3.2, 4.1, 4.2, 5.2, 5.3, 6.2, 7.2, 7.5, 7.6, 9.1-9.6; FSDG D.2; IAQ 8.6, 9.1, 11.5
- DOE, BSAR 1.24, 2.4, 8.1
- Domes, ASMM 6.47, 9.34-9.36
- Domestic Hot Water, BSAR 2.15; ESAM 1.3, 1.4, 1.6, 5.4, 7.1, 7.2, 7.4, 8.7, 10.7, 10.8, 21.1, 22.4, 22.5
- Doors
 - access, DCS 2.12; FSDG 8.1
 - entry, RSMG 2.1
 - fire, FSDG 8.1
 - installation, FSDG 8.2
- Doors and Openings, LAG 3.41
- DOP efficiency, APP 9.5, 9.12
- Doppler, TAB 15.1, TABPG 5.1
- Dormer(s), RSMG 4.3
- Double
 - bundle heat recovery, APP 13.4
 - pipe condenser, APP 12.7
 - seated valve, APP 3.11
 - tube condenser, APP 12.7
- Double Span, LAG 2.10
- Down discharge, KVS 2.6
- Downspout, ASM 1.1
 - gages, ASMM 1.68
 - gutter connections, ASMM 1.73
 - hanger, ASMM 1.75
 - manufactured, ASMM 1.69
 - shop fabricated, ASMM 1.71
- Downspout(s), RSMG 1.2, 1.3, 1.29
 - joints, RSMG 1.29
 - manufactured, RSMG 1.31
- Downstream, See Heater location
- Downstream System, TAB 14.6; TABPG 4.6
- Downstream, Velocity Pressure, TAB 2.22
- Draft, DD 3.2, 15.5
- Draft Stop, FSDG 2.1
- Draftiness, IAQ 2.1
- Drain pans, IAQ 3.7, 6.10
- Drainage, ASMM 1.1; FRP 2.4, 7.8, 9.2, D.6
 - factor, ASMM 1.7
- Drains, FRP 7.7, 9.7; PVC 21; TAB 9.5
 - location, PVC 54
- Drapery pockets, ASMM 8.38
- Draw through system, APP 4.4
- Drift, APP 3.4
- Drive

arrangements, TAB 5.8
 design, TAB 5.10
 installations, TAB 5.10
 Drive guards, DCS A.35; DD 6.16
 Droop, APP 3.4
 Dry
 expansion coil, APP 12.3
 media filters, APP 2.16
 Dry air, TAB 2.6
 cooler exchangers, APP 12.19; ESAM 20.2
 evaporative cooler, APP 12.18; DD 9.13
 Dry Bulb, TAB 2.8
 room, DD 15.6
 temperature, ESAM 2.4, 5.7, 5.8, 5.14, 10.6,
 10.9, 20.4; TAB 2.8
 Dry Spots, FRP 7.1, 7.9
 Dryer venting, RCSI 10.5
 Dual
 path (air) systems, DCS A.30
 room thermostat, APP 3.10
 temperature water system, APP 10.18
 Dual, Duct Terminal Boxes, TAB 6.2
 Dual duct
 central station apparatus, APP 5.3
 control systems, APP 5.8
 design, APP 5.7
 dual-fan VAV, APP 7.6
 high velocity system, APP 5.2
 low velocity system, APP 5.2
 systems, APP 5.1; TAB 7.5, 14.14
 terminal units, APP 5.4
 thermostat, APP 3.10
 VAV systems, APP 7.5
 Dual Function Tachometer, TAB 11.16
 Dual Temperature Water System (DTW), TAB 9.1
 Dual, Duct System, TABPG 4.14
 Dual-Path Systems, TAB 7.1
 Dual-Temperature, TAB 15.9; TABPG 5.9
 Duckwork, and installation, KVS 6.2

Duct, See Rectangular duct, See Round duct, See
 Also Flanges, See Also Transverse joints, See Also
 Vibration, See Also Flexible liner, See Duct rein-
 forcement, See Also Duct construction, See Also
 Sealants, See Also Dampers; DD 15.6; FSDG 5.4,
 B.1, F.3
 16 gauge, DCS A.28
 18 gauge, DCS A.27
 20 gauge, DCS A.26
 22 gauge, DCS A.25
 24 gauge, DCS A.24
 26 gauge, DCS A.23
 access openings, PVC 21, 44, 53
 acoustically lined, DD 11.34, 11.36
 air leakage, DD 5.22
 amount to be tested, LTM A.8
 approaches to outlets, DCS 2.18; DD 3.7
 area table, LTM A.10
 aspect ratio, DD 2.3
 auxiliary equipment, PVC 21
 beaded, DCS 1.74, 7.1, 7.16
 bracing, SEIS 2.2
 branches, DD 6.7
 branches entering, main, DCS 2.8; PVC 17
 circumference table, LTM A.10
 cleaning, BSAR 1.1, 6.1; IAQ 10.4
 commercial, IAQ 10.7
 connection pressure losses, DD 6.1
 connections, RNDC 11.58, 12.30, 12.31, 12.49,
 12.50, 12.59, 13.7, 15.6, 15.30
 construction, PVC 5; SEIS 3.1
 construction materials, DD 12.1
 criteria, RCDC 9.1
 crossbroken, DCS 1.74, 7.1, 7.16
 cross-sectional area, DCS A.11; RCDC 7.61
 dampers, PVC 21, 53
 design, DCS 1.3; RCDC 4.1; RCSI 3.5
 branch duct takeoffs, RCSI 6.3

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal	FSDG	Manual	PVC	Under Construction
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis &	FSE	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper	RCDC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC)
COM	Manual	GSSC	Guide for HVAC Systems	RCSI	Construction Manual
DCS	Building Systems Analysis &	IAQ	Food Service Equipment Fabrication	RNDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct
DD	Manual	IDC	and Installation Guidelines	SEIS	Construction Standards
DEHG	HVAC Systems Commissioning	KVS	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	TAB	Residential Comfort Systems
ESAM	Manual	LAG	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems	TABPG	Installation Standards
FGDC	HVAC Duct Construction	LTM	Approach		Round Industrial Duct Construction
	Standards Metal and Flexible	MGW	Accepted Industry Practice for		Standards
	HVAC Systems Duct Design		Industrial Duct Construction		Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for		Kitchen Ventilation Systems and		Seismic Restraint Manual –
	Air Handling Systems		Guidelines		Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
	Energy Systems Analysis and		Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet		HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting
	Management		Metal Lagging		and Balancing
	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction		HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual		TAB Procedural Guide
	Standards		The Manager's Guide for Welding		



branch supply, RCS 6.4
charts(tables), DD 14.1
data, DD 5.1
flexible ducts, RCSI 7.3
fundamentals, DD 5.1
general approach, DD 3.7; RCS 6.3
grille and register selection, RCSI 6.5
hangers, RCSI 7.3
induction, APP 8.7
materials, RCSI 7.2
metal gauges, RCSI 7.1
procedures, RCSI 6.1
return air, RCSI 6.5
rules of design, RCSI 6.3
tables, APP 14.1; DD 14.1
dimension, FSDG 5.4
drains, PVC 21, 54
ductulator, RCSI 6.1
ductwork size, RCSI 6.1
connections, DCS 2.21; PVC 18, 38, 54
elbows, PVC 17
end caps, PVC 21
end reflection loss, DD 11.42
end taps, DD 5.29
fibrous glass, RCSI 7.1
fitting loss coefficients, DD 5.12
flanges, PVC 18
flat oval, DCS 3.11
flexible, DCS 3.15
formula derivation, RCDC 9.1
friction loss, DD 5.12
fume hoods, PVC 20, 55
rectangular, PVC 17; RCSI 7.1
round, PVC 17; RCSI 7.1
segmented, PVC 17, 29
sound, DD 11.36
tables and charts, DD 14.6
fitting loss coefficients, TAB 2.23
fittings, PVC 5
fixed corner, RCDC 7.37, 8.8
flexible, PVC 18, 38, 54
functional standards, DCS 7.1
gaskets, PVC 18
hangers and support, DCS 4.1; FRP 7.3; PVC 20; RCSI 7.5
heat gain, DD 4.4, 5.27
heat loss, DD 4.4, 5.27
hinged corner, RCDC 7.46, 8.11
hot gas/filler rod welding, PVC 16, 25, 28
installation standards, DCS 1.7; LTM 1.2
insulation, RCSI 2.13, 7.4
intermediate supports, RCDC 6.5
internal supports, RCDC 6.2, 6.4
joints, RNDC 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 12.59, 15.3, 15.4
lagging, external, DD 11.29

leakage, BSAR 7.1; DD 2.4, 4.7; DD LTM 1.1; DD RCSI 7.6
leakage classifications, DD 5.23; LTM 4.3
leakage tests, DCS 1.9; LTM 1.4, 3.1, 5.1, A.8
lining, DCS 2.25; RCSI 7.4
load capacity tables, RCDC 7.59
loads, RCDC 4.1
longitudinal seams, DCS 1.66, 3.8; PVC 17
louvers, DCS 5.3; PVC 21, 45
material thickness, RCDC 4.5, 7.1
materials, DCS 1.8, 3.3; PVC 53
modifications, RCDC 6.1
narrowscope tables, DCS A.13
needs, IAQ 10.4
noise, DCS 7.12
obstructions, DCS 2.10
offsets, DCS 2.9; PVC 17, 33
outlet, DD 6.4, 6.5
outlet elbows, DD 6.4, 6.5
overpressure, DCS 1.7, 6.20, 7.6
panel load, RCDC 4.4
penetration, FSDG 11.2
performance requirements, DCS 1.3
pressure changes, TAB 2.21
pressure changes during flow, DD 5.11
pressure classification, DCS 1.6
pressure comparison by gauge, DCS A.23
pressure-velocity classification, DCS 1.4, 1.6
rectangular, PVC 5
rectangular (sound), DD 11.24
reinforcing data, RCDC 7.55
research, DD 5.28
roughness factors, DD 14.8
round, PVC 5
saddles, RNDC 13.8, 13.24, 13.25
seal class, DCS 1.9
sealing, BSAR 7.6; RCS 7.6
sealing materials, DCS 1.11; LTM 1.5
sealing requirements, DCS 1.9; LTM 1.3
seaming leakage, DD 5.23
silencers, DD 11.37
size, RCDC 4.6
size/tolerance, PVC 5
sizing, DD 4.3; PVC 53
examples (metric), DD 8.4
examples (U.S.), DD 7.4
procedures (metric), DD 8.2
procedures (U.S.) units, DD 7.1
sizing examples, TAB 7.11
solvent welding, PVC 16
sound attenuation, DD 11.31
sound breakout, DD 11.23
spacing, RCDC 4.5, 7.59
squareness, PVC 5
static pressure, DCS 1.5



stiffeners, RCDC 4.5
 supply, BSAR 7.2
 support flashing, DCS 5.7
 supports, DCS 4.2; PVC 20, 40; RNDC 13.19-13.21
 surface area table, DCS A.7; LTM A.9
 survey, BSAR 6.2, 7.1
 symbols, DCS 1.1; DD 4.9
 system, See Duct system; TAB 5.13, 5.14
 table, RCSI 7.6
 terminal devices (sound), DD 11.20
 testing, BSAR 7.2; DCS A.22; LTM 3.1
 tools, IAQ 10.9
 transitions, DCS 2.9; PVC 17, 33
 transverse joints, PVC 18
 turning vanes, DCS 2.5, A.41; PVC 17, 32
 underslab, DCS 3.23
 unlined rectangular, DD 11.33
 unlined round, DD 11.35
 vacuum, IAQ 10.10
 vanes, DCS 2.5
 velocity, DCS 1.4
 velocity pressure, DD 14.6
 ventilator heads, DCS 5.9; PVC 21
 vibration, DCS 7.12
 wall thickness, PVC 5

Duct analysis, BSAR 1.1
 Duct construction, See Also Reinforcement, See Seams, See Also Expansion joints, See Also Hangers, See Also Connections, See Also Ventilation system testing, See Also Supports; IDC 5; PVC 5
 attachments, DCS 1.77; PVC 16
 classification, DCS 1.6; IDC 5
 connections, IDC 15
 deflection limits, DCS 7.3
 design, IDC 70
 duct reinforcement, DCS 1.15; IDC 25; PVC 5
 elbows, PVC 17, 24
 equivalent, DCS 7.9
 expansion joints, IDC 15
 fittings, DCS 1.17; PVC 5

hangers, DCS 4.1; IDC 30
 location, PVC 5
 materials, DD 12.1; PVC 5
 rectangular, IDC 8
 reinforcement, IDC 25
 requirements, DCS 1.7; LTM 1.2
 rigidity, PVC 5
 round, IDC 6
 sheet metal gage, DCS A.2; IDC 6
 specifications, DCS xiii; IDC 5
 steel, PVC 26
 supports, IDC 30
 testing, IDC 74
 transitions, PVC 24
 type, PVC 5

Duct enclosures, KVS 3.2
 Duct Liner, FSDG 5.12
 Duct penetrations, KVS 1.2
 Duct Rating, FGDC 2.2
 Duct shaft enclosure, KVS 3.3
 Duct System Checks, TAB 12.7; TABPG 2.7
 Duct system(s), TAB 2.22, 14.17
 airflow, DD 5.1
 apparatus, DD 9.4
 apparatus charts, DD 9.7
 attenuation of, DD 11.31
 classification, RNDC 2.1, 16.5
 construction, DD 12.1
 cost, DD 2.5
 general requirements, DD 1.1
 kitchen, DD 13.1
 materials, DD 12.1
 pressure class, DCS 1.6, 1.8
 return air, DD 7.12
 selection, DD 4.1
 sizing procedures, DD 7.1, 8.2
 special, DD 13.1
 symbols, DCS 1.1

Duct traverses, TAB 13.7; TABPG 3.7
 Duct wrapping, KVS 3.3

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Ducts, TABPG 4.17
 Ductwork, See Also Duct; IAQ 3.7; KVS 3.1, 8.1;
 TAB 12.7, 14.8; TABPG 2.7, 4.9
 inspection points, KVS 8.1
 sealing, DCS 1.8; LTM 4.3
 Type II, KVS 5.5
 Durometer, FRP 7.3
 Dust
 atmospheric, APP 2.12
 holding capacity, APP 2.14
 Dust collection, TAB 13.8; TABPG 3.8
 Dynamic
 insertion loss, DD 11.2, 15.6
 loss coefficient, DD 5.10
 losses, DD 5.12
 Dynamic losses, TAB 2.22
 Dynamic Suction Head, TAB 8.5

E

Earth heat source, APP 11.15
 Earthquake, RNDC 4.5, 5.3; SEIS 1.1
 Earthquake Gas Valves, RCSI 11.8
 Eaves, ASMM 6.27
 Economics, DD 2.1
 Economizer Cycle, TAB 4.6
 Economizer(s)
 cycle, APP 3.20
 Economy cycle, APP 3.20
 Eddy current couplings, APP 7.22
 Edge, MGW 5.4
 Education, IAQ 1.5
 Effect, DD 15.6; FSDG F.5
 of blades, DD 3.6
 stack, DD 5.8
 sun, DD 15.6
 surface, DD 3.5
 system, DD 5.6
 temperature, FSDG F.5
 wind, DD 5.8; FSDG F.5
 Effect of Blades, TAB 6.9
 Effective
 area, DD 3.1, 15.1
 draft temperature, TAB 6.6
 duct length, TAB 5.19
 Efficiency
 filters, APP 2.12
 Efficiency Curve, TAB 3.6
 Elbow Equivalents, TAB 9.10
 Elbow(s), DCS 2.3; PVC 17; RSMG 1.29
 configurations, other, DD 5.29
 oval, DCS 3.14
 press formed, PVC 30
 rectangular, DCS 2.3
 round, DCS 3.10
 segmented, PVC 29

square throat, PVC 31
 Elbows
 90 Degree, FGDC 4.3, 5.11, 5.12
 Less Than 45 Degrees, FGDC 4.3
 Electric
 coils, APP 3.24; KVS 4.6
 controls, APP 3.14; TAB 4.1
 electronic sensors, RCSI 9.1
 heat control, APP 3.33
 hydraulic actuator, APP 3.13
 motor, APP 3.12
 motors, TAB 3.1
 pneumatic controls, APP 3.14
 Electric operators, TAB 4.5
 Electrical, TAB 12.6; TABPG 2.6
 circuits, TAB 3.1
 contractors, FSDG 4.2
 data, TAB 12.2; TABPG 2.2
 demand limiting, APP 3.44
 diagram, TAB 3.1
 equations, metric, APP 14.20
 equations, U.S., APP 14.19
 resistances, TAB 3.1
 services, TAB 3.1
 systems, APP 3.8; BSAR 2.19; TAB 3.1
 Electrical energy consumption, ESAM 13.4
 Electricity
 generator, MGW 3.2
 inductance, MGW 3.3
 inverters, MGW 3.2
 NEMA, MGW 3.3
 rectifier, MGW 3.2
 shock, MGW 4.2
 sources, MGW 3.2
 transformer, MGW 3.2
 Electro/pneumatic controls (EP switches), APP 3.14
 Electrode(s)
 flux-cored, MGW 2.24, 2.25
 grinding, MGW 2.7
 ovens, MGW 3.9
 stainless steel, MGW 2.15, 2.27
 suggested, MGW 2.23
 tungsten, MGW 2.5
 type, MGW 2.2, 2.14
 Electro-Hydraulic, TAB 4.2
 Electronic
 controls, TAB 4.1
 filters, APP 2.17
 manometer, TAB 11.2
 tachometer, TAB 11.14
 thermometer, TAB 11.19
 Electro-Pneumatic, TAB 4.2
 Electrostatic effects, APP 2.14
 EMCS
 communications, TAB 4.9

points list, TAB 4.9
 signals, TAB 4.8
 Emissivity, LAG 2.1
 Enclosure(s), ASMM 7.15; DD 6.10
 End Caps, FGDC 4.8, 5.18
 End reflection loss, DD 11.42
 End taps, DD 5.29
 Endotoxins, IAQ 3.7
 Energy, See Energy conservation, See Energy recovery, See Energy transfer
 audit, BSAR 2.5, 2.9; ESAM 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, 10.5, 10.7, 10.8
 conservation, BSAR 4.4; ESAM 1.1, 1.3, 1.6, 1.7, 1.8, 1.9, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5, 2.6, 2.9, 3.1, 4.6, 5.1, 5.3, 5.11, 5.15, 8.1, 8.2, 8.7, 10.1, 10.2, 10.7, 10.8, 11.1, 11.2, 11.3, 13.6, 14.7, 14.9, 22.1; IAQ 1.1
 consumption, BSAR 2.1; ESAM 1.1, 1.4, 1.8, 1.9, 2.1, 3.1, 4.6, 4.7, 5.6, 5.7, 5.11, 5.14, 5.15, 5.16, 7.2, 8.1, 8.2, 8.7, 9.2, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, 10.7, 11.2, 11.3, 13.5, 20.1; IAQ 1.3
 control systems (EMCS), APP 3.40
 electric, BSAR 2.10
 heat, BSAR 2.10
 management, BSAR 1.1, 2.4; ESAM iii, 1.3, 5.15, 11.2; IAQ 1.3; RCSI 9.2
 management strategies, IAQ 1.3
 psychometric calculation, APP 3.43
 saving(s), BSAR 2.26, 7.9
 Energy Management System (EMS) Diagrams, TAB 12.2; TABPG 2.2
 Energy conservation, BSAR 4.4
 control, APP 3.38
 Energy control equipment, FSDG B.1
 Energy cost-savings, COM 3.3, 9.5
 conservation, COM 2.1
 consumption, COM 9.2
 Energy efficiency, KVS 2.16
 Energy Management Systems (EMCS), TAB 4.7

Energy recovery, APP 2.7; BSAR 2.21; ESAM iii, 1.7, 8.13, 10.11, 14.1, 14.6, 14.7, 14.10, 16.1, 16.2, 17.1, 17.2, 17.3, 17.4, 17.6, 17.7, 17.10, 18.1, 18.2, 18.3, 18.9, 18.15, 18.16, 19.2, 20.2, 21.1, 22.1, 22.2, 22.3, 23.1, 23.2, 23.4, 23.5, 23.6, 23.7, 23.10, 23.11, 23.13, 23.14, 23.15, 23.16
 Energy recovery equipment, ESAM 1.7, 4.2, 14.1, 14.3
 Energy recovery units (ERU), KVS 3.3
 Energy Savings Ideas, TAB 7.6
 Energy usage, IAQ 1.2
 Enthalpy, APP 12.1; DD 15.6
 control, APP 3.21
 optimization, APP 3.43
 specific, DD 15.6
 Enthalpy (Total Heat), TAB 2.8, 2.11
 Entrainment, DD 15.6; TAB 6.8
 Entrance fittings, DD 5.10
 Entropy, DD 15.6
 specific, DD 15.6
 Envelope, IAQ 1.3
 building, ASMM 9.30
 Environmental
 air, FSDG E.1
 conditions, BSAR 8.2
 considerations, BSAR 2.16
 EPA, BSAR 6.4, 8.11, 10.1; IAQ 6.1
 management, IAQ 1.5
 safety, BSAR 3.17
 EPA Test Method 202, KVS 2.1
 Equal Friction, TAB 7.9
 method, DD 4.3, 7.2, 8.2, 15.6; TAB 7.9
 Equations, MGW 8.8
 air, DD 14.54, 14.58
 electric, APP 14.19, 14.57, 14.61
 examples, MGW 8.8
 fan, DD 14.55, 14.59
 HVAC, DD 14.54

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



hydronic, APP 14.17; DD 14.56, 14.60
 metric equivalents, DD 14.63
 metric units, DD 14.58, 14.62
 parameter, MGW 8.3
 pump, APP 14.15; DD 14.55, 14.59
 quick method, MGW 8.13
 U.S. units, DD 14.54
 Equipment, ASMM 6.41; SEIS 3.1
 access to, APP 2.25
 auditing, BSAR 2.23
 auxiliary control, APP 3.14
 booms, MGW 3.7
 carbon arc, MGW 2.3
 cooling, APP 2.8
 flux-cored, MGW 2.10
 gas metal arc, MGW 2.8
 gas tungsten arc, MGW 2.6
 heating, APP 2.7
 HVAC apparatus, DCS A.31
 identification, PVC 51
 isolation, APP 2.7
 mechanical, APP 2.7
 miscellaneous, MGW 3.10
 plasma arc, MGW 2.12
 positioner, MGW 3.9
 safety, MGW 3.10
 seam, MGW 3.8
 selection, RCSI 4.1
 shielded metal arc, MGW 2.4
 submerged arc, MGW 2.13
 support flashing, DCS 5.7
 tables, MGW 3.9
 torches, MGW 3.7
 turning rolls, MGW 3.8
 venting, RCSI 10.1
 welding, See Welding equipment
 Equipment heat flow, TAB 2.5
 Equipment pressure loss, TAB 15.1; TABPG 5.1
 Equipment pressures differences, TAB 15.6; TABPG 5.6
 Equipment selection, RCS 4.1
 Equipment service life, DD 2.6
 Equipment venting, RCSI 10.1
 Equivalent
 duct diameter, DD 15.6
 Equivalent length, TAB 2.22
 Equivalent pipe length, TAB 9.10
 Escalators, FSDG F.3
 Estimating
 considerations, MGW 8.12
 cost, MGW 8.2
 definitions, MGW 8.2
 Evaluation, sample report, IAQ 11.6
 Evaporation, TAB 9.15
 Evaporative, DD 15.6

air conditioning, RCSI 1.3
 control, APP 3.27
 coolers, APP 3.27; RCSI 4.2
 cooling, DD 15.6
 dry air (indirect), APP 12.18
 indirect/direct, APP 12.20
 pan humidifier, APP 3.27
 slinger-type, RCSI 4.3
 systems, APP 12.18
 Evaporator, APP 12.4; TAB 10.2
 shell and tube, APP 12.5
 Evases, DD 6.1
 Examples
 exhaust air system, DD 7.12, 8.12
 IAQ problems, OBUC 7.1
 interpolation in stack design, GSSC 6.13
 return air system, DD 5.11, 7.12, 8.12
 sound (systems), DD 11.45
 supply air system, DD 7.5, 7.16, 8.4, 8.16
 Exhalation, IAQ 10.3
 Exhaust, IAQ 3.1, 3.2, 4.1
 air, KVS 1.2
 air dampers, TAB 4.6
 air inlet, TAB 6.14
 air procedures, TAB 14.18; TABPG 4.18
 air systems, ESAM 1.1, 2.3; TAB 14.16; TABPG 4.16
 covers, DCS 5.9, 5.10
 example, DD 7.13, 8.13
 fans, APP 2.29; RCSI 10.5
 filtration, APP 9.25
 hoods, TAB 14.18; TABPG 4.18
 laboratory, APP 9.21
 outlet, DD 3.18
 systems, APP 9.22; DD 7.12, 8.12; RCSI 10.5
 Exhaust Duct System, FSDG B.2
 Exhaust duct(s), KVS 5.4
 and Type I hoods, KVS 3.1
 design of, KVS 5.3
 Exhaust fans, FSDG F.3; KVS 4.2; TAB 13.6; TABPG 3.6
 outlets, FSDG F.3
 Exhaust hood, KVS 6.4
 and manufacturers, KVS 6.4
 Exhaust terminations, KVS 5.5
 Existing buildings, TAB 1.1
 Existing installations, TAB 13.10; TABPG 3.10
 Exit corridors, FSDG 11.2
 Exit fittings, DD 5.10
 Exothermic reaction, FRP 2.2
 Expansion, ASMM 9.6
 aluminum, ASMM 1.16
 anchor, SEIS 2.1, 3.1, B.1
 building, ASMM 5.1
 copper, ASMM 1.16

gravel stop, ASMM 5.6
 gutter, ASMM 1.16
 joint, SEIS 3.3, B.1
 roof, ASMM 5.2, 5.58, 5.10
 roof-to-wall, ASMM 5.12
 slab, ASMM 5.16
 stainless, ASMM 1.16
 steel, ASMM 1.16
 tanks, ESAM 17.14
 wall, ASMM 5.14
 Expansion and contraction, LAG 2.15
 Expansion joints, ASMM 5.2; IDC 15; LAG 3.25, 3.26, 3.27; PVC 19, 38; RNDC 7.19, 7.26, 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 11.8, 11.31, 11.43, 15.27, 15.33, 15.34, 16.2, 16.8; SEIS 3.3
 flexible, IDC 20
 location, PVC 54
 rectangular, IDC 19
 round, IDC 19
 Expansion of building materials, See Expansion joints
 Expansion Space, FSDG 5.2, 5.3
 Expansion tank, APP 10.16
 Expertise
 commissioning, BSAR 5.5
 duct cleaning, BSAR 6.3
 duct system analysis, BSAR 7.6
 energy management, BSAR 2.22, 4.3
 system operation/maintenance, BSAR 3.11, 8.15
 Explosion doors, IDC 56, 58; RNDC 58
 Explosive atmospheres, APP 15.28
 Exposed duct installation, DD 3.15
 Exposure, IAQ 1.1
 limits, Washington state, IAQ C.2
 Extended plenum, DD 4.4
 method, DD 4.3, 8.15
 sizing, DD 7.21, 8.21
 Extended surface, DD 15.6
 Exterior components, DCS 5.2
 exhaust covers, DCS 5.9
 intake covers, DCS 5.9

louvers, DCS 5.2
 rectangular gooseneck, DCS 5.8
 rooftop HVAC, DCS 5.6
 screens, DCS 5.2
 storm covers, DCS 5.9
 Exterior surface, FRP 3.1, 3.3, 5.11, 7.1
 External
 drains, See Drains, See Rooftop duct installation, See Piping
 lagging, DD 11.29
 Extinguisher, MGW 4.3

F

Fabrication, FRP 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2, 2.4, 4.1, 5.1, 5.2, 5.9, 5.10, 6.1, 7.1, 7.9, 8.1, B.1, D.2
 details, FSE 2.1
 Face
 and bypass control, APP 3.6
 and by-pass dampers, ESAM 2.4, 4.2, 18.9, 20.3
 area, DD 15.6
 damper, APP 3.6
 velocity, DD 15.6; TAB 14.17
 Face Velocities, TABPG 4.17
 Facilities and services, IAQ 6.1
 Facilities, computer, BSAR 2.20
 building construction, IAQ 6.2
 building related, IAQ 3.1
 Facility managers, KVS 1.1
 Factory accessories, DD 6.15
 Fahrenheit scale, DD 15.6; TAB 2.1
 Fan, FSDG B.1, F.3; PVC 55, 57
 accessories, obstructions, DD 7.16
 adjustment(s), TAB 13.2, 13.6; TABPG 3.2, 3.6
 air volume, TAB 5.10
 airflow, TAB 5.10, 13.7; TABPG 3.7
 amperage, TAB 13.2; TABPG 3.2
 and ductwork, KVS 4.2
 assisted box, TAB 6.2
 axial, DD 6.16

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- balancing, IAQ 4.3
- belt driven, KVS 4.1
- belt guards, DCS A.31
- belts, TAB 5.8
- blades, KVS 8.2
- boxes, DD 6.15; RNDC 15.36, 15.39
- brake power, TAB 5.12
- bypass, APP 7.24
- capacity ratings, TAB 5.17
- centrifugal appurtenances, DD 6.18
- characteristics, KVS 4.1; TAB 5.1
- check, TAB 13.1; TABPG 3.1
- classes, TAB 5.4
- coil, TAB 8.14
- coil units, APP 10
- conditions, DD 6.7; RNDC 15.36, 15.38
- connections, DCS 2.21
- construction, TAB 5.4
- curves, TAB 2.25
- dampers, DD 6.4
- discharge position, DCS A.30
- drive adjustment, TAB 13.6; TABPG 3.6
- drive changes, TAB 13.2; TABPG 3.2
- drives, TAB 5.9
- exhaust air, APP 2.29
- inlets, TAB 5.19
- law relationships, TAB 5.14
- laws, TAB 2.1, 2.25
- manufacturers, KVS 5.5
- modulation, return air, APP 2.28
- motors, TAB 5.9
- nomenclature, TAB 5.8
- outlet
 - conditions, DD 6.1; RNDC 15.36, 15.40
 - diffusers, DD 6.1
 - ducts, DD 6.1
 - outlet velocity, TAB 5.12
 - outlets, TAB 5.19
 - performance, TAB 5.19
 - performance curve, TAB 5.14
 - powered boxes, TAB 6.2
 - powered VAV boxes, TAB 14.9
 - powered VAV terminal units, APP 7.14
 - pressure, DD 5.3, 5.10
 - pressure losses, DD 6.1
 - rating table, TAB 5.4
 - return, IAQ 4.3
 - return air, APP 2.4
 - room requirements, APP 2.23
 - rotation, DCS A.30
 - selection, TAB 5.19
 - single, APP 2.26
 - sizing, DD 4.7
 - sound, DD 11.12

- speed changes, DD 5.3
- static pressure (SP), TAB 5.12
- static pressures, TAB 13.2; TABPG 3.2
- supply air, APP 2.6
- system, TAB 6.3
- system curve relationship, TAB 5.13
- terminology, DD 6.18
- testing, TAB 5.17
- testing procedures, TAB 13.1; TABPG 3.1
- total pressure (TP), TAB 5.12
- tracking, IAQ 4.3
- variable pitch vane axial, APP 7.23
- VAV supply air, APP 7.18
- velocity pressure (Vp), TAB 5.12
- volume, TAB 13.1; TABPG 3.1
- volume control, APP 3.29
- Fan Powered VAV Boxes, TABPG 4.9
- Fascia, ASMM 1.63
 - cap, ASMM 2.10
 - corner, ASMM 2.20
 - design, ASMM 2.3
 - extruded, ASMM 2.22
 - joint, ASMM 2.8
 - porcelain enamel, ASMM 2.16
 - snap-on, ASMM 2.91
 - soffit, ASMM 2.5
- Fastener
 - Fasloop Termination, FGDC 5.1
 - Locking Cap, FGDC 5.1
 - Pop Rivet, FGDC 5.1
- Fasteners, FSDG 5.5; LAG 2.14
- Fatigue, FGDC 2.1
- FCAW, See Flux-cored arc welding
- Federal government, BSAR 1.12, 1.22, 8.2
- Federal Standard 209G, APP 9.13
- Feedback, BSAR 1.5
- Feeders, MGW 3.5
- Fiberglass duct, DD 12.6
- Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP), DD 12.5
- Fibers, IAQ 4-6
- Fibrous glass ducts
 - installation, FSDG 5.13
- Field
 - procedures, TAB 12.6; TABPG 2.6
 - readiness, TAB 12.6; TABPG 2.6
 - review, TAB 12.7; TABPG 2.7
- Field checks, BSAR 2.14
- Field Installation of FRP Duct, FRP 4.1
- Field measurements, TAB 5.20
- Field wrapped joints, FRP 4.11
- Filament Winding, FRP 1.1, 2.1, 2.2, 2.4, A.7, D.2
- Filler metals, MGW 2.23
- Fillet, MGW 5.5
 - intermittent, MGW 5.6



Filter(s), DD 9.1, 15.6; ESAM 1.3, 2.2, 2.3, 2.5, 4.5, 4.6, 5.1, 5.3, 5.14, 9.1, 10.9, 10.10, 11.1, 14.10, 17.7, 17.10, 17.11, 17.14, 18.3, 18.9, 18.12, 18.15, 19.2, 20.3, 22.3; IAQ 3.3; KVS 2.4, 2.11, 2.13; PVC 55; RCSI 4.5; TAB 12.7, 14.17

- adsorption, APP 2.21
- diffusion, IAQ 3.5
- direct interception, IAQ 3.5
- electrostatic, RCSI 4.5
- electrostatic force, IAQ 3.5
- HEPA, APP 2.16
- housing, APP 9.5
- inertial deposition, IAQ 3.5
- installation, APP 2.19
- methods, IAQ 3.5
- panel, APP 2.14
- pressure loss data, DD 9.3
- renewable media, APP 2.17
- straining, IAQ 3.5
- testing, IAQ 3.5
- types, IAQ 3.6
- wetted element, RCSI 4.5

Filter-drier, TAB 10.3

Filtering, RCSI 1.3

Filters, TABPG 2.7, 4.17

Filtration

- clean room, APP 9.5
- exhaust air, APP 9.25

Final design

- data, DD 9.1
- documents, DD 4.7

Financial, BSAR 1.16, 2.30, 3.18, 4.4, 5.7, 6.5, 7.8, 8.18

- loss, IAQ 6.1

Finned tube radiation, APP 10.2; TAB 8.14

Fire and smoke

- codes, DD 1.3

Fire and smoke control, FSDG D.1

- test criteria, FSDG D.1

Fire and Smoke Damper, testing, FSDG 3.4

Fire and smoke dampers, KVS 1.2; TAB 12.7; TABPG 2.7

Fire codes, KVS 2.14

Fire Damper, FSDG 2.1, 6.1, 12.1

- approval, FSDG 5.1
- evaluation, FSDG 2.1
- horizontal, FSDG 5.11
- improper installation, FSDG 5.7
- installation, FSDG 3.3, 5.1, 5.2
- multiple sections, FSDG 5.1
- out of wall, FSDG 5.9
- requirements, FSDG 2.1
- sleeve, FSDG 2.1, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3
- vertical, FSDG 5.8

Fire Endurance Ratings, FSDG 3.3

Fire losses, RCSI 11.2

Fire Rated

- assembly, FSDG 11.2
- eiling, FSDG 2.1
- floor system, FSDG 11.2
- partition, FSDG 2.1

Fire Resistance Directory, FSDG 3.4, 4.1, 11.4

Fire Resistance Rating, FSDG 5.1

Fire Resistant Partition, FSDG 3.3

Fire stopping, RCSI 10.6

Fire suppression system, FSDG B.1, F.3; KVS 2.4, 2.16

Fire Tests, FSDG 3.4

Fire Walls, FSDG 2.1, 3.3

Fireplaces, IAQ 3-6

Fire-resistive, FSDG 3.1

- assembly, KVS 1.2
- construction, FSDG 3.1
- ratings, FSDG 3.1
- requirements, FSDG 3.3
- testing, FSDG 3.1

First cost, BSAR 1.18

Fitter section, APP 2.4

Fitting, FGDC 5.9

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Reinforcement, FGDC 5.8, 5.9
 Transition, FGDC 5.16

Fitting(s), See Also Fabrication of fittings; DCS 2.1; IDC 70; RNDC 1.1, 4.4, 4.6, 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 11.5, 11.8, 11.31, 11.43, 15.8, 15.11, 15.12, 15.13, 16.2, 16.5, 16.6

- access doors, DCS 2.12
- branch connections, DCS 2.8, 3.11
- combined, DD 5.13
- converging, IDC 71
- divided-flow, DD 5.17
- elbows, DCS 2.3; IDC 72
- entering velocity, DD 8.8
- entrance, DD 5.10
- fan connections, DCS 2.21
- grille connections, DCS 2.18
- liner fasteners, DCS 2.28
- loss coefficients, DD 14.19
- offset, DCS 2.9
- pressure losses, DD 7.2, 8.3
- register connections, DCS 2.18
- round duct, DCS 3.1
- tables, DD 7.2, 8.3
- tee, DCS 2.7, 3.11
- transition, DCS 2.9

Fixed blade grilles, TAB 6.12

Fixed corner, RCDC 7.37, 8.8

Fixed plate exchangers, APP 12.19; ESAM 17.6, 18.1, 18.2, 18.3, 20.2

Flame retardent, FRP 2.1, 2.2, 2.4, 3.1, D.2

Flammable vapors, DD 13.1

Flange, DCS 1.63; PVC 18; RCDC 8.7; RNDC 1.1, 1.2, 1.4, 3.12, 3.13, 4.2, 4.8, 4.9, 5.10, 6.1, 6.9, 7.2, 7.11, 7.18, 7.24, 7.31, 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 11.4, 11.8, 11.10-11.11, 11.12-11.15, 11.23, 11.24-11.27, 11.31, 11.34, 11.35, 11.36-11.39, 11.43, 11.46, 11.47, 11.48-11.51, 11.55, 12.1, 12.5, 12.28-12.58, 12.83, 13.5, 13.16, 13.54-13.85, 14.2, 15.5, 15.6, 16.5, 16.6, 17.10, 17.17

- alternate, RCDC 8.7
- angle, RCDC 8.7
- assembly, PVC 35
- attachment, PVC 18
- bolting, DCS 1.63
- channel, RCDC 8.7
- dimensions, PVC 18
- face, PVC 18
- height table, RCDC 7.62
- rectangular duct, PVC 36
- requirements, FRP 7.2

Flapper, APP 3.19

Flapper-nozzle-bimetal assembly, APP 3.20

Flashing, KVS 6.5; LAG 3.9, 3.40; RSMG 1.25, 1.34, 2.1, 2.5, 3.3, 4.3, 4.5, 4.9, 5.1

- base, ASMM 4.14

- chimney, ASMM 4.34
- counter, ASMM 4.6
- dormer, ASMM 4.42
- equipment support, ASMM 4.32
- gable, ASMM 6.33
- general, ASMM 4.2
- head sill, ASMM 4.42, 6.54
- head wall, ASMM 6.31
- hip, ASMM 4.129
- installation, ASMM 4.4, 4.6, 4.10
- ledge, ASMM 4.40
- mansard, ASMM 4.24
- penetration, ASMM 6.63, 6.65, 6.67, 6.69
- pipes, ASMM 4.26, 4.28
- rake, ASMM 6.33
- ridge, ASMM 4.129, 6.31
- roof, ASMM 4.38
- saddle, RSMG 3.1, 5.1
- shingle roof, ASMM 4.44
- soffit, ASMM 6.53
- structural steel, ASMM 4.30
- stucco, ASMM 4.36
- termite, ASMM 4.46
- valley, ASMM 4.18, 4.20
- wall, ASMM 4.109, 6.65

Flat drive joint, DCS 1.63

Flat lock, LAG 3.4

Flat oval circular equivalents, DD 14.14

Flat oval duct, DCS 3.11

- construction standards, DCS 3.13
- fittings, DCS 3.14
- sound, DD 11.27
- steel gauge schedule, DCS 3.13

Flat sheet, LAG 2.18

Flatback elbows, RNDC 15.10

Flexible connectors/connections, APP 10.17; FRP 7.7, 7.9, 9.7; PVC 18; RNDC 15.35, 15.37, 16.2, 16.8; TAB 9.6

- construction, PVC 19, 37
- defined, DCS 3.22
- location, PVC 18, 54
- material, PVC 18
- support, DCS 3.19; PVC 19, 37

Flexible duct, See Flexible liner, See Flexible connectors/connections; DCS 3.15; IDC 13; RCSI 7.3

- accessories, DCS 3.18
- connectors, DCS 3.22
- installation standards, DCS 3.15
- joining specifications, DCS 3.17
- support specifications, DCS 3.19
- supports, DCS 3.20
- types, DCS 3.16
- wire reinforced, DCS 3.16; IDC 14

Flexible liner, DCS 2.25

- fasteners, DCS 2.26, 2.28



installation standards, DCS 2.25
 interruption, DCS 2.30
 optional hat section, DCS 2.29
 Flexible wraps, KVS 3.3
 Float valve, APP 12.4
 Floating action, APP 3.3
 Floating control, APP 3.10
 Flooded chillers, APP 10.10
 Flooded coil, APP 12.4
 Floor Plan
 symbols, FSDG 10.3
 Floor Plenums, TAB 6.13
 Floor-Ceiling Assembly, FSDG 2.1
 Flow
 calculation, LTM A.11
 characteristics, APP 3.5
 coefficient, APP 3.5; LTM A.15; TAB 4.3
 hoods, laminar, APP 9.30
 measurement(s), TAB 15.1, 15.3
 meters, LTM A.11, A.17, A.18; TAB 15.1
 rates, hydronic design, APP 10.26
 sensing, APP 3.10
 Flow measuring hood, TAB 11.8, 11.9
 Flow Meters, TABPG 5.1
 Flow variation, TAB 15.9; TABPG 5.9
 Flow, Measurement(s), TABPG 5.1, 5.3
 Flow/pressure check, TAB 13.1; TABPG 3.1
 Fluid
 dynamics, TAB 2.20
 equal percentage, APP 3.5
 flow control, APP 3.5
 linear, APP 3.5
 mechanics, TAB 2.19
 meter, LTM A.11, A.17, A.18
 properties, TAB 2.19
 quick opening, APP 3.5
 statics, TAB 2.19
 viscosity, TAB 8.12
 Food service equipment, FSE 1.1
 Forced air heating, RCSI 3.1
 Forced air systems, RCSI 1.2

Forced convection units, TAB 8.14
 Foreign inclusions, FRP 3.3, 7.1
 Formaldehyde, IAQ 4.1
 material table, IAQ E.2
 Formula derivation, GSSC 6.1; RCDC 9.1; RNDC 15.9, A.1
 bolt-end stiffeners, RCDC 9.11
 duct extension, RCDC 9.8
 duct thickness, RCDC 9.2
 factors of safety, GSSC 6.4
 fixed-end stiffeners, RCDC 9.11
 internal supports, RCDC 9.11
 load criteria, RCDC 9.9
 longitudinal compression, GSSC 6.3
 longitudinal tension, GSSC 6.4
 particulate material, RCDC 9.7
 stiffener size, RCDC 9.5
 support spacing, RCDC 9.7
 thickness of stack shell, GSSC 6.2
 Fouling, ESAM 4.6, 16.2, 17.5, 17.10, 17.11, 21.5
 Four-pipe systems, APP 8.8, 10.21; TAB 9.4, 15.5; TABPG 5.5
 FPM, FSDG E.1
 Framing channels, RNDC 13.29-13.49, B.8
 Freeze protection, ESAM 18.16, 18.17, 20.3
 Freezing water, RSMG A.1, 1.2
 Freons, See Refrigerants
 Friction, TAB 2.21
 Friction head, TAB 8.4
 Friction losses, TAB 2.21, 2.23, 2.27
 Front face discharge, KVS 2.6
 FRP Guide Specifications, FRP 1.2
 Fuel
 emissions, IAQ 3.9
 Full (Complete) Penetration Joint, RNDC 1.4, 8.4, 9.5, 10.5, 14.1, 17.6, 17.10
 Full Load Amps, TAB 3.5
 Fume
 hoods, APP 9.26; BSAR 3.17; FRP 7.6; TAB 14.17

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



laboratory, APP 9.25
performance criteria, APP 9.27
Fume Hoods, TABPG 4.17
Fumed silicas, FRP 2.4
Functional capabilities (software), APP 3.43
Functional problems, COM 3.1-3.3, 5.1, 5.2, 5.4,
6.1, 7.4
Functional Testing, FSDG D.1
Fundamentals, IAQ 1.1; TAB 2.1
Fungal contamination, IAQ 3.7
Fungi, IAQ 5.2
Furnaces, RCSI 1.1
Furnishings, IAQ 1.3, 6.8, 10.1, 10.11

G

Gage location, TAB 8.12
Gages, ASMM 6.9; TAB 9.6
Galvanized, DD 12.1
 coatings, DD 12.3
 sheet metal, FSDG 12.1
 steel, LAG 1.2, 1.3; RNDC iii, 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4,
 3.1, 3.5, 3.12, 3.13, 4.1, 5.1, 5.8, 7.6, 7.27, 7.29,
 7.30, 8.1, 8.2, 8.5-8.23, 8.26-8.53, 8.54, 8.55,
 9.1, 11.1, 11.2, 11.2, 11.7, 11.8, 11.9, 11.10,
 11.12-11.17, 11.21, 11.22, 11.23, 11.24-11.27,
 11.28, 11.29, 11.54, 12.1, 12.2, 12.3, 12.5, 12.6,
 12.16, 12.22, 12.24, 12.25, 12.26, 12.28, 12.34,
 12.36-12.39, 12.40-12.47, 12.52, 12.56, 12.59,
 12.61, 13.1, 13.2, 13.10-13.15, 13.16,
 13.54-13.81, 14.5, 14.8, 17.13; RSMG C.9
 thickness tolerances, DCS A.2
Gas, MGW 2.2
 compressed, MGW 4.3
 expansion factor, LTM A.16
 fired heat control, APP 3.35
 shielding, MGW 2.2, 6.3
Gas arc welding
 tungsten (GTAW), MGW 2.5
Gas piping, SEIS 3.3
Gasket materials, FRP 7.3
Gaskets, PVC 18; RNDC 3.12, 3.13, 8.4, 9.4, 10.4,
11.8, 11.31, 11.43, 12.82, 12.83, 15.27, 16.6
Gates, RNDC 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 11.8, 11.31, 11.43,
15.27, 15.30
Gauge, APP 10.17
 composite tables, DCS A.13, A.14
Gel time, FRP 2.3, 2.4
General Air System TAB Procedures, TAB 14.1;
TABPG 4.1
General Contractor, TAB 12.4; TABPG 2.4
General procedures, TAB 13.12; TABPG 3.12
General requirements, TAB 1.2
General TAB Procedures, TAB 14.3; TABPG 4.3
Glass
 rigid fibrous, DD 12.6

Glass Fabric, FGDC 3.3
Glass pipe, SEIS 3.3
Glossary, APP 15.1; MGW 11.1; PVC 87
Glycol solutions, APP 10.31
 inhibited, APP 10.31
Glycols, FRP 2.1
Goal, BSAR 1.5, 1.6, 2.6
Gooseneck, rectangular, ASMM 8.2; DCS 5.8
Grade Markings for steel bolts, RNDC 12.64
Gradual switches, APP 3.14
Gravel stop-fascia
 adjustable blade, DD 3.17
 applications, DD 3.12
 connections, DCS 2.18
 fixed blade, DD 3.17
 lightproof, DD 3.17
 stamped, DD 3.17
 v-blade, DD 3.17
Gravity loads, SEIS 1.1
Grease, KVS 2.13
 and containment, KVS 4.3
 and drainage, KVS 4.2
 filters, KVS 5.3
Grease duct enclosure, factory built, KVS 3.3
Grille, FGDC 4.12
Grilles, IAQ 6.10; RCSI 10.5
 adjustable blade, TAB 6.14
 fixed, TAB 6.14
 light proof, TAB 6.14
 v-blade, TAB 6.14
Groove, MGW 5.4
Grooved Lockseam, RNDC 1.1, 1.3, 1.4, 8.1, 15.1,
15.2
Ground wire, TAB 3.3
Group of ducts, SEIS 3.2
GRP, FRP 1.1
Guards, drive, DD 6.16
Guide Specification, PVC 48; RNDC iii, 1.2, 1.3,
1.4, 16.1
Gun
 position, MGW 2.11
 spool, MGW 3.7
Gutter(s), See Expansion joints; ASMM 1.5; RSMG
A.1, B.1, 1.2
 accessories, ASMM 1.55; RSMG 1.27, 1.28
 at wall, ASMM 1.25
 brackets, ASMM 1.30, 1.33
 built-in, ASMM 1.15, 1.49, 1.53
 clearance, RSMG 1.26
 combination, ASMM 1.31
 concealed, ASMM 1.37
 expansion, ASMM 1.19, 1.21, 1.23
 formed, RSMG 1.23
 gage, ASMM 1.9
 half, ASMM 1.7, 1.13, 1.47

half round, RSMG 1.8
 hanging, ASMM 1.35
 heavy, ASMM 1.27, 1.39
 installation, RSMG 1.20
 installations, ASMM 1.47, 1.48, 1.49, 1.53
 length, RSMG 1.25
 level, RSMG 1.4
 metal, RSMG 1.23
 ogee, ASMM 1.13
 overflow, RSMG 1.2
 rectangular, ASMM 1.6, 1.8
 sizing, ASMM 1.5; RSMG 1.3
 sloped, ASMM 1.7, 1.41; RSMG 1.2, 1.4
 straps, ASMM 1.30
 styles, ASMM 1.11
 supports, RSMG 1.4
 Gypsum board, DD 12.6; KVS 3.2

H

Halon, BSAR 8.11
 Hand Lay-up, FRP 1.1, 1.2, 2.2, 2.4, 5.1, 6.1, 7.1, D.1, D.3
 Handling, Shipping and Installation, FRP 7.9
 Hanger bar, RNDC 13.7, 13.52, 13.53
 Hanger rod, RNDC 13.4, 13.7, 13.52, 13.53
 Hanger(s), IDC 30; KVS 6.4; PVC 20; SEIS 2.2
 clamp, IDC 32
 horizontal, PVC 39
 rod, IDC 31
 Hangers, FGDC 6.1, 6.2, 6.3, 6.4
 Hangers and supports, RNDC 1.1, 1.2, 1.4, 3.12, 3.13, 4.2, 4.9, 5.11, 7.2, 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 11.8, 11.31, 11.43, 13.1, 13.2, 13.17, 16.2, 16.7, 17.10
 Hanging systems, DCS 4.1
 attachments to structures, DCS 4.3
 Hard sell, BSAR 1.9
 Hardness, Barcol, FRP 1.1
 Hat bar, LAG 2.13
 Hat channel, LAG 2.13
 Hazard, MGW 4.5

assessment, OBUC 2.7
 H-Bar, LAG 2.2
 HCFC, ESAM 15.1, 15.2, 15.3
 Head, TAB 8.1
 Header box, LAG 3.46
 Heads, TAB 2.27, 8.4
 Health, IAQ 1.1, 1.6
 complaints, OBUC 2.6
 concerns, FRP 8.2
 problems, IAQ 2.1
 response, OBUC 6.1
 WHO, IAQ 1.1
 Heat, See Heat transfer, See Also Heat exchanger,
 See Heat pumps
 balance, APP 13.1
 concept, APP 13.2
 emission, APP 3.5
 exchangers, APP 3.33, 10.11, 11.5; DD 19.2;
 TAB 8.13, 15.8; TABPG 5.8
 gain, DD 4.4, 5.27
 internal, APP 2.4
 latent, DD 15.27
 loss, DD 4.4, 5.27
 recovery, IAQ 3.1
 redistribution, APP 13.2
 rejects selection, APP 11.10
 residential, ESAM 17.6, 18.10, 18.11, 18.12
 sinks, APP 11.13
 storage, APP 13.7
 supplement, APP 2.7
 transfer method, TAB 15.2; TABPG 5.2
 Heat exchangers
 air-to-air, APP 11.2
 air-to-water, APP 11.13
 components, APP 11.15
 design considerations, APP 11.7
 types, APP 11.11
 waste, APP 11.13
 water-to-water, APP 11.13
 Heat flow, TAB 2.1, 2.5, 2.5
 Heat loads, RCSI 2.1

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Heat loss calculations, RCSI 2.3
 ceiling and roof losses, RCSI 2.5
 wall losses below grade, RCSI 2.5
 window and door losses, RCSI 2.3

Heat producing equipment, KVS 2.1

Heat pumps, ESAM 4.7, 4.8, 4.9, 5.6, 17.5, 21.2, 21.3, 21.5, 22.1, 22.2; RCSI 1.1; TAB 8.13
 EER, RCSI 3.7
 ground coupled, RCSI 3.7
 heat pump systems, RCSI 3.5

Heat recovery, ESAM 1.6, 1.8, 2.1, 7.4, 8.13, 9.3, 10.7, 14.2, 14.3, 14.4, 14.6, 14.7, 15.3, 17.3, 17.11, 18.3, 18.7, 18.8, 18.9, 18.12, 18.13, 18.15, 18.16, 18.17, 19.3, 20.2, 20.3; KVS 4.6
 application, APP 13.3
 chiller, APP 13.2
 hydronic, APP 13.1

Heat Responsive Link, FSDG 2.1

Heat stops, FSDG 2.2, 3.3, 11.4
 installation, FSDG 3.3
 performance, FSDG C.1

Heat transfer, TAB 2.1, 2.2, 2.4, 15.1, 15.9, 15.10; TABPG 5.1, 5.9, 5.10
 coefficient, DD 14.51
 rates, TAB 15.10

Heat transfer fluids, RCSI 11.4
 flow requirements, RCS 11.4
 materials, RCSI 11.5
 safety precautions, RCSI 11.4
 water/glycol, RCSI 11.4

Heat Transfer Rates, TABPG 5.10

Heat, and fume, KVS 2.4

Heated thermocouple anemometer, IDC 88

Heater coils, TAB 3.9

Heater location, DEHG 4.1

Heater position, DEHG 3.2
 horizontal, DEHG 3.2
 vertical, DEHG 3.2

Heater types
 flange, DEHG 1.1, 3.2, 5.1
 slip-in, DEHG 1.1, 3.2, 5.1

Heater(s)
 indirect fired, APP 3.35
 wire anemometer, IDC 88

Heating, BSAR 8.4; TAB 2.11
 charts, DD 9.7
 coils, DD 9.7
 control, APP 3.23
 equipment, APP 2.7
 perimeter, APP 7.28
 supplemental, APP 11.17
 systems, RCSI 3.1

Heating and cooling
 coil installations, DCS 2.12
 thermostat, APP 3.11

Heating and humidification, TAB 2.12

Heating and ventilation, DCS A.27
 blow-thru, DCS A.27
 draw-thru, DCS A.27

Heating mode, TAB 15.12; TABPG 5.12

Heating tolerance, TAB 15.9; TABPG 5.9

Height, See Stack height

Heliarc, MGW 2.5

Helical rotary, compressor, APP 10.10, 12.6

HEPA, BSAR 6.4; IAQ 10.9

HEPA filter, IAQ 10.6

HEPA filtration system, APP 2.16, 2.19, 9.4

Herbicides, IAQ 3.10

Hermetic compressor, APP 12.5

High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters, APP 2.16, 2.19, 9.4

High rise facilities, IAQ 3.7

High shear mixer, FRP 2.4

High side walls, DD 3.12
 installation, DD 3.13

High temperature water systems (HTW), APP 10.18; TAB 9.1

High Velocity System, TAB 7.7

Hinged corner, RCDC 7.46, 8.11

Hiring, MGW 10.2

Hiss (sound), DD 11.7

History, ASMM 9.32; IAQ 1.1; MGW 6.2

Hood(s), APP 9.30; ASMM 8.42; DCS 2.23; FSDG B.1, B.2; IDC 73
 balancing, TAB 13.7
 exhaust duct, DD 13.1
 eyebrow, KVS 2.11
 manufacturer, KVS 7.2
 performance, APP 9.26

Hood, Balancing, TABPG 3.7

Hopper, LAG 3.58

Horizontal forces, SEIS 1.1, A.1

Hot gas bypass, TAB 10.4

Hot gas piping, APP 12.6; TAB 10.3

Hot patch, FRP 4.4, 4.6, D.3

Hot water
 boilers, APP 10.6

Hot water procedures, TAB 15.8; TABPG 5.8

Hot-rolled (Carbon) steel, RNDC 3.1, 3.3, 3.12, 3.13, 7.5, 7.27, 8.1, 8.25, 8.26-8.53, 11.1, 11.10-11.11, 12.24, 13.29, 17.13

Hot-rolled shapes and plates, SEIS 3.1

Household circuit, TAB 3.3

HSPF, RCSI 3.7
 heat pumps, RCSI 4.2
 performance, RCSI 3.6
 seer, RCSI 3.7
 thermostat, RCSI 9.2
 water-to-air, RCSI 3.7
 water-to-air heat pumps, RCSI 3.7

Hubless piping systems, SEIS 3.3
 Humidification, TAB 2.12
 evaporative pan, APP 3.27
 water spray, APP 3.27
 Humidifiers, RCSI 1.3, 4.5
 installation, RCSI 4.7
 room humidifiers, RCSI 4.6
 Humidistat, TAB 4.6
 Humidity, ESAM 1.1, 1.3, 2.1, 2.3, 2.4, 2.8, 2.9, 4.1, 4.4, 5.1, 5.3, 5.7, 5.9, 5.13, 5.14, 8.7, 9.1, 9.2, 10.6, 16.8, 16.12, 16.16, 16.17, 17.1, 17.2, 17.4, 17.5, 17.9, 17.10, 18.3, 18.4, 18.8, 18.15, 19.2, 19.3, 20.4, 22.1; IAQ 2.1
 mold growth, IAQ 3.7
 ratio, TAB 2.8
 sensing elements, APP 3.9
 HVAC, See specific type, Metric or U.S.; IAQ 6.9, 8.6, 10.1, 11.4
 access, IAQ 10.6
 checklist, IAQ A.4
 clean room, APP 9.1
 constant volume systems, IAQ 3.2
 contractors, COM 1.1, 2.1, 2.2, 3.1-3.4, 4.1, 5.1, 5.2, 5.4, 6.1-6.4, 7.1, 7.3, 7.5, 7.6, 8.1; FSDG 4.2
 design, APP 1.1; IAQ 3.1
 ductwork, clean room, APP 9.8
 equipment, ESAM 1.3, 5.4, 6.1, 8.13, 10.9, 14.2
 equipment space, APP 1.5
 fundamentals, TAB 2.1
 heat pump systems, IAQ 3.2
 manuals, APP 1.7
 multizone systems, IAQ 3.2
 parameter selection, APP 1.1
 protection (IAQ), OBUC 3.1
 systems, COM 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2, 3.1, 3.3, 4.1, 4.2, 5.2-5.4, 6.1-6.3, 7.1, 7.2, 9.2, 9.5; TAB 2.1
 types, APP 2.1
 unit connections, DCS A.28
 unit ventilator systems, IAQ 3.3
 variable air volume systems, IAQ 3.3

zoning, COM 1.2, 3.3, 5.3, 5.4, 6.3, 7.1, 9.1, 9.3-9.5
 HVAC design of systems (sound), DD 11.9
 equations, DD 14.54
 sound spectrum, DD 11.11
 system codes, DD 1.2
 system loads, DD 3.18
 systems library, DD 1.1
 HVAC Duct Construction Standards Manual, KVS 6.4
 HVAC equations-U.S., DD 6.48
 HVAC equipment, TAB 12.1; TABPG 2.1
 HVAC protection, See Also Control Measures (IAQ); OBUC 3.1
 air cleaning, OBUC 3.3
 changing work practices, OBUC 3.3
 cover or seal, OBUC 3.3
 indicators, OBUC 5.1
 inspection checklist, OBUC A.9
 liability, BSAR 4.2
 local exhaust, OBUC 3.3
 locating occupied areas, OBUC 4.2
 managing construction, OBUC 4.1
 manual, BSAR 6.1
 modifying equipment op, OBUC 3.2
 occupants, BSAR 4.2
 particulates, OBUC 2.2
 planning checklist, OBUC A.5
 problems, classifying, OBUC 4.2
 product substitution, OBUC 3.2
 project documentation, OBUC 5.3
 quality control, OBUC 5.1
 references, OBUC A.1
 resources, OBUC A.3
 scheduling (construction), OBUC 3.5
 source control, OBUC 3.2
 standards, BSAR 4.1; OBUC 5.1
 volatile organic compounds (VOCs), OBUC 2.2
 HVAC related sounds, RCSI 5.1
 HVAC System, TAB 12.2; TABPG 2.2

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



HVAC Systems Testing, Adjusting and Balancing Manual, KVS 7.1

and technical details, KVS 7.2

HVAC unit suspension, DCS 4.19

large duct support, DCS 4.13

lower attachments, DCS 4.9

rectangular duct, DCS 4.6

riser supports, DCS 4.14

round duct, DCS 4.8

trapeze loads, DCS 4.10

upper attachments, DCS 4.3

wall support, DCS 4.17

HVAC units, TAB 12.6; TABPG 2.6

Hybrid systems, APP 3.8

Hydrogen sulfide, IAQ 4.1

Hydronic, BSAR 3.16; ESAM 4.1, 4.2, 4.4, 4.6, 8.13, 10.11; TAB 2.26

air separation, RCS 11.1

balancing, TAB 11.11

coils, APP 3.21; DCS 2.11, 6.14

control, APP 3.4

design

flow rates, APP 10.26

procedures, APP 10.27

design (closed system), APP 10.25

design flow, RCS 11.1

design procedures, RCS 11.2; TAB 9.13

distribution, APP 3.30

equations, metric, APP 4.18

equations, U.S., APP 4.17

equivalents, APP 14.15, 14.15; DD 14.55

flow, APP 10.23

heat recovery, APP 13.1

heating systems

control, APP 3.32

pipng, RCS 11.1

pipng devices, TAB 9.5

pipng noise, RCS 11.1

pressure drops, APP 10.26; RCS 11.1

pressure losses, TAB 2.26

sizing, RCS 11.2

system basics, TAB 2.26

system design, TAB 9.8

system losses, RCS 11.2

system procedures, TAB 15.3

system(s), APP 10.1; TAB 2.27, 9.1

systems ready, TAB 15.3

tables and charts, APP 14.23

zone control, APP 3.33

Hydronic, Trouble Analysis Guide, TAB 9.8

Hydronic Systems Ready, TABPG 5.3

Hydronic, System Procedures, TABPG 5.3

Hydrostatic head, TAB 2.20

Hygroscopic, APP 3.9

IAQ

analysis, BSAR 7.8

audit, BSAR 4.2

classifying problems, OBUC 4.2

concerns, BSAR 4.1

controls, selecting, OBUC 4.1

criteria, COM 7.1

documentation, OBUC 5.3

duct analysis, BSAR 7.1

duct cleaning, BSAR 6.1

enforcing specifications, OBUC 5.2

example projects, OBUC 7.1

hazard assessment, OBUC 2.7

office, IAQ 1.1

reoccupancy, OBUC 5.2

surveillance, OBUC 5.1

IAQ defined

ASHRAE, IAQ 1.2

WHO, IAQ 1.1

IAQ management team, IAQ 11.5

IAQ policy, IAQ 11.5

IAQ problems, origins, IAQ 3.1

IAQ proposal, sample, IAQ 11.2, 11.3

IAQ proposals, IAQ 11.1

ICBO, FSDG R.1; SEIS 2.1

ICC, FSDG R.1

Ice, RSMG A.1, A.2, 1.2, 1.4, 1.11, 1.17, 1.20, 1.32

Ice dams, ASMM 6.29

Ice Load, RNDC iii, 4.1, 4.2, 4.4, 4.5, 4.6, 4.11, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 6.1, 6.6, 7.1, 7.3, 7.5, 7.9, 7.16, 7.23, 7.27, 7.29, 7.33, B.5

Illumination levels, ESAM 1.6, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4

Illustrations, FSDG 5.1

Image, BSAR 1.13

Impact resistance, FRP 2.2

Impaction, APP 2.14

Impingement, APP 2.14

Importance factor, SEIS A.1

Improvements, IAQ 4.4

Incident log, IAQ A.14

Increasesers, DD 5.10

Incremental action, APP 3.34

Indirect fired heaters, APP 3.35

Indirect/direct evaporative cooling, APP 12.20

Indoor, See IAQ

air particulates, OBUC 2.2

air quality (IAQ), BSAR 1.1, 5.4; COM 1.1, 2.1, 3.1, 5.4, 7.1, 9.4; OBUC 1.1

criteria, COM 7.1

unitary equipment, APP 11.4

Indoor design temperature, RCS 11.2

Induction

air - water, APP 8.2
 central HVAC apparatus, APP 8.7
 control systems, APP 8.10
 design, APP 8.5
 duct design, APP 8.7
 equipment, APP 8.3
 non-changeover, APP 8.10
 operation, APP 8.4
 piping systems, APP 8.7
 reheat systems, APP 8.1
 systems, APP 8.1
 terminal unit control, APP 8.12
 units, APP 8.6
 VAV systems, APP 7.7
 VAV terminal units, APP 7.16
 Induction Reheat Systems, TAB 7.4, 7.6
 Induction Unit Systems, TAB 8.14, 14.14; TABPG 4.14
 Induction VAV boxes, TAB 14.12; TABPG 4.12
 Industrial duct, RNDC 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 2.1, 14.1, 14.2, 16.5, 17.1, 17.5, 17.6
 classification, RCDC 2.1
 definition, RCDC 1.1
 material characteristics, RCDC 2.2
 Industrial ventilation, TAB 13.12; TABPG 3.12
 Inertia, Moment of, RNDC 4.2, 4.3, 4.4, 4.7, 4.8, 4.9, 5.1, 5.8, 5.11, 7.2, 7.3, 7.3, 7.7, 7.11, 7.15, 7.18, 7.22, 7.24, 7.29, 7.31, 11.55, 12.2, 12.3, 12.4, 12.6, 12.12, 12.13, 12.14, 12.15, 12.16, 12.17, 12.28, 12.48, 12.56, 17.12
 Infrared, TAB 11.21
 Infection, IAQ 5.2
 Information sources, IAQ D.1, D.4
 Ingestion, FRP 8.2
 Inhalation, FRP 8.2
 Initial planning, TAB 12.1; TABPG 2.1
 Initial procedures, TAB 14.3; TABPG 4.3
 Initial System Adjustments, TAB 15.4; TABPG 5.4
 Initiators, FRP 2.1, 2.2
 Inlet
 air types, DD 3.19

box, DD 6.15, 6.16
 connections, DD 6.9
 criteria, DD 3.17
 duct vanes, DD 6.10
 ducts, DD 6.7
 elbows, DD 6.7
 pressures, TAB 14.6
 return air, DD 3.18
 spin, DD 6.13
 types, DD 3.17
 vane control, APP 7.21; DD 6.17
 Inlet Pressures, TABPG 4.6
 Inline, KVS 4.2
 Inner surface, FRP 4.1, 7.1, 7.3
 Insects, IAQ 5.2
 Insertion loss, DD 11.29, 14.72, 14.73, 15.9
 Inside design conditions, RCSI 2.9
 Inspection, See Weld Inspection; BSAR 8.4, 8.8, 8.9; FGDC A.3; FRP 2.4, 7.8, 7.9; FSDG D.1; IAQ 8.1; MGW 7.3
 Inspections and cleaning, KVS 4.2, 6.3
 Installation, See Unitinstallation
 costs, APP 1.2
 criteria, TAB 8.11, 8.12
 Instrumentation, TAB 13.12; TABPG 3.12
 Instruments for Air Balancing, TAB 11.17
 Instruments, Selection of, TAB 13.12; TABPG 3.12
 Insulation, IAQ 4.1; RCSI 11.5; RNDC 1.1, 3.12, 3.13, 4.2, 4.3, 4.11, 5.1, 5.2, 6.1, 7.3, 7.5, 7.13, 7.16, 7.20, 7.22, 7.27, 7.29, 7.33, 8.2, 8.3, 8.5, 8.24, 8.25, 8.54, 9.3, 9.5, 9.34, 10.3, 10.5, 11.9, 11.33, 11.45, 12.4, 12.13, 13.16, 13.54-13.85, 16.2, 17.3, 17.6, 17.8, 17.10, 17.11, 17.14, 17.15, B.6
 intake covers, DCS 5.9
 pins, LAG 2.6
 refrigeration piping, RCSI 11.5
 Intake covers, DCS 5.10
 Interception, APP 2.14
 Interconnecting ductwork, KVS 3.1
 Interest, BSAR 1.19
 Interior

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



layer, FRP 3.1, 7.3, D.1, D.4
shafts, APP 2.24
Interlock relays, DEHG 6.1
Internal
centrifugal fan shrouds, APP 7.23
design, RCDC 6.4
discharge, KVS 2.8
heat, APP 2.4
rate of return method, ESAM 23.4, 23.10
supports, RCDC 6.2
timers, APP 3.15
International Building Code, FSDG 3.1
International Code Council, FSDG 3.3
International Mechanical Code, FSDG 3.3
construction documents, FSDG 3.3
International Training Institute (ITI), TAB 1.2
Interpretation, MGW vii
Interviews, IAQ 8.1
Intumescent, FRP 3.1
Investigation, test plan, IAQ 11.4
Investigative process, IAQ 6.8
Investment, BSAR 1.18; ESAM 1.8, 5.3, 5.4, 5.9, 5.13, 5.15, 8.5, 10.1, 10.2, 10.4, 13.6, 14.1, 14.7, 14.8, 14.9, 23.7, 23.8, 23.9, 23.10, 23.11, 23.12, 23.13, 23.14, 23.15, 23.16
return on, APP 1.2
Ionization Detector, FSDG E.1
Ionizing plate air cleaners, APP 2.18
Island hoods, KVS 6.4
Isolation
devices, DCS A.36
equipment, APP 2.7

J

Jacketing, LAG 1.1
Jet expansion, TAB 6.11
Joining duct, FRP 4.1, 4.4
Joint, FGDC 3.3
Butt, FGDC 3.4
Female, FGDC 3.5
Male, FGDC 3.5
V Groove, FGDC 3.5
Joint (s). See specific joint type. See Weld joints, See Expansion, Expansion joints; FRP 4.1, 4.4, 4.5; FSE 2.1; IDC 14; RCSI 11.4; RSMG 1.4, 1.11, 1.13, 5.6
ball and socket, IDC 14
basic, MGW 5.11
bolted, FSE 2.2
brazed, RCSI 11.4
butt, FSE 2.2; MGW 5.12
corner, MGW 5.14
design, MGW vi
penetration (percent), RNDC 4.2, 7.3, 7.10, 7.30
rectangular duct, DCS 1.61

round duct, DCS 3.9
sealants, RNDC 8.4, 9.4, 10.4, 11.8, 11.31, 11.43, 12.82, 12.83, 15.27, 16.6
slip, IDC 14
soldered, RCSI 11.4
types, MGW 5.4
welded, FSE 2.1
Joints and seals, LAG 2.15, 3.23

K

Kitchen Exhaust Systems, TAB 14.17; TABPG 4.17
Kitchen systems, DD 13.1
Knee brace hanger, RNDC 13.86, 13.87
Knee brace support, RNDC 13.1, 13.88, 13.89
Knurled Stud and Drive Plates, LAG 2.4

L

Laboratory
exhaust systems, APP 9.21
fume hoods, APP 9.25
safety guidelines, APP 9.20
supply air systems, APP 9.19
systems, APP 9.18
Lagging. See Cladding; LAG 1.1
Laminar flow, APP 9.4
Laminate construction, FRP 1.2, 3.1, 3.3, 5.1, 5.9, 6.2, 7.1, A.1, C.1, C.5
Laminates, FRP 2.1, 2.2, 2.4, 3.1, 3.3, 5.1, 5.2, D.1, E.1
Lap joint, LAG 3.24; RCDC 8.1; RSMG 1.15
Lap seam, LAG 3.4
Large Systems, TAB 9.2
Latent heat, ESAM 16.16, 16.19, 17.1, 17.2, 17.5, 17.6, 17.7, 17.9, 17.10, 18.1, 18.2, 18.3, 18.4, 18.7, 18.8, 18.10, 18.11, 20.4, 21.4; IAQ 2.2; TAB 2.12
Lateral bracing system, SEIS 3.1
Laws of thermodynamics, ESAM 16.1; TAB 2.5
Lay-up procedure, FRP 4.4
Lead. See Copper; RSMG C.9
radiation shielding, DCS 1.5
Leakage, BSAR 7.3; DD 2.4, 5.22
analysis, LTM A.2, A.4
classes, BSAR 7.4; DD 5.24; LTM 4.3, A.1, A.7
classification, LTM 4.1, A.4
factors, LTM A.7
percentage, DD 5.25
rate determination, LTM A.5
rated dampers, APP 3.38
rates, BSAR 8.16
Leakage testing, LTM 3.1, A.14
equipment, LTM 5.1, A.11, A.17
example, LTM 3.2
precautions, LTM 3.1
project specification, LTM A.6
requirements, LTM 3.1

Ledge(s), RSMG 4.5, 4.7
 Legionella, IAQ 3.7, 6.9
 Level(s) (L), DD 11.3, 15.8
 Liability concerns, IAQ 1.4
 Life cycle, BSAR 1.21, 1.22
 Life safety, APP 3.8
 Light(s), BSAR 2.15
 control, APP 3.44
 level, IAQ 2.2
 quality, IAQ 2.2
 systems
 heat, APP 7.1
 troughs, ASMM 8.40
 Lighting, ESAM 1.1, 1.3, 1.4, 1.6, 1.7, 1.8, 2.1, 2.1, 2.2, 2.10, 5.3, 5.10, 5.13, 5.14, 8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.5, 8.6, 8.7, 10.1, 10.6, 10.8, 11.2, 12.1, 12.3, 13.5; IAQ 1.4
 Lighting fixtures, KVS 6.5
 Lights, types of, KVS 2.14
 Limit controls, TAB 4.2
 Limitations, FGDC 3.3
 Linear, APP 3.5
 devices, APP 3.6
 diffuser plenum, DCS 2.20
 polyethylene, PVC 67
 Linear Coefficient of Thermal Expansion, FRP 7.7
 Lined duct acoustically (round), DD 11.35
 Linkages, TAB 6.6
 Liquid
 chiller controls, APP 10.11
 Liquid sight glass, TAB 10.3
 Liquid solenoid valve, TAB 10.3
 Listed components, KVS 1.4
 Listed hoods, KVS 5.2
 Listing agencies, KVS 1.3
 Live Loads, RNDC 4.4, 4.9, 4.11, 5.1, 5.2, 5.11
 Load calculation
 considerations, DD 3.3
 conversion, RCDC 4.2
 cooling, APP 4.4
 dead loads, RCDC 4.2

diagrams, RCDC 4.3
 direction, RCDC 4.2
 distribution, BSAR 2.20
 live loads, RCDC 4.2
 load units, RCDC 4.2
 particular weight, RCDC 4.2
 product, BSAR 2.20
 system pressure, RCDC 4.2
 wind forces, RCDC 4.2
 Local control systems, APP 3.8
 Locating outlets, DD 3.8
 Location of flow devices, TAB 11.25
 Location, Devices, TAB 12.4; TABPG 2.4
 Location, planning stack, GSSC 2.1
 Locks and seams, LAG 3.5
 Logarithms, DD 14.84
 Longitudinal bracing, SEIS 3.2, B.1
 Longitudinal seams, DCS 1.39; IDC 23; RCDC 8.1; RNDC 1.1, 1.3, 8.1, 8.2, 8.4, 8.55, 9.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.36, 10.2, 10.4, 10.34, 11.1, 11.3, 11.16, 11.17, 11.28, 11.29, 11.40, 11.41, 11.52, 11.53, 12.1, 12.5, 12.21, 12.49, 12.50
 acme lock, IDC 23
 butt welded, IDC 23; RCDC 8.2
 corner weld, IDC 24; RCDC 8.5
 groove, IDC 24
 inside flanged, RCDC 8.3
 lap joint, IDC 23; RCDC 8.1
 outside flanged, RCDC 8.4
 Pittsburgh, IDC 24
 snap, IDC 24
 spiral, IDC 23
 Loss
 coefficient tables, TAB 2.24
 coefficients, TAB 2.23
 magnitude, TAB 2.22
 Loss coefficient(s), See specific names listed above; DD 5.12, 5.18, 8.2
 converging junctions, DD 14.28
 diverging junctions, DD 14.33
 elbows, DD 14.19

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- entries, DD 14.41
- exits, DD 14.44
- fitting loss calculator, DD 6.47
- obstructions, DD 14.49
- plates, DD 14.48
- screens, DD 14.48
- transitions, DD 14.24
- Loss, material, IAQ 6.1
- Losses straight duct, DD 5.12
- Losses, area changes, DD 5.18
 - medical costs, IAQ 6.1
 - productivity, IAQ 6.1
- Louvers, DCS 5.2; DD 9.9; FRP 7.7, 9.8; LAG 3.47; PVC 21, 45, 56; RCSI 10.5
 - adjustables, ASMM 7.5
 - canopy, ASMM 7.21
 - construction, ASMM 7.3
 - design data, DD 9.15
 - enclosures, ASMM 7.16
 - extruded, ASMM 7.9
 - formed, ASMM 7.1
 - free area calculation, DCS 5.3
 - free area charts, DD 9.4
 - mullion, ASMM 7.12
 - penthouse, ASMM 7.18
 - screens, ASMM 7.14
 - sizing, DD 9.15
 - stationary, ASMM 7.1
 - sunshade, ASMM 7.20
 - systems
 - schedule, DCS 5.2
- Low pressure
 - steam, APP 3.4
- Low temperature
 - water system(s), APP 10.18
- Low Temperature Water Systems (LTW), TAB 9.1
- Low Velocity Systems, TAB 7.5
- Lowered night temperatures, APP 3.37
- LP Gas Tanks, RCSI 11.9

M

- Magazine, BSAR 1.14
- Magnesium, MGW 2.2
- Magnetic contactors, DEHG 6.1
- Magnetic Starter, TAB 3.8
- Main duct, TAB 2.25
- Maintenance, BSAR 1.1, 8.1; COM 1.1, 3.1, 5.4, 7.2, 8.1, 9.2, 9.6; ESAM 1.1, 1.3, 1.4, 1.9, 2.1, 2.8, 3.1, 4.5, 5.1, 5.7, 5.12, 5.14, 5.15, 6.1, 6.3, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.7, 9.1, 9.2, 10.1, 10.2, 10.7, 10.8, 10.9, 11.1, 11.2, 11.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.10, 15.3, 16.2, 17.12, 18.4, 18.9, 18.14, 18.16, 18.18, 19.4, 20.3, 20.6, 22.6, 23.4, 23.6, 23.8, 23.9, 23.11, 23.14; KVS 8.1; RSMG B.1
 - cost(s), COM 1.1, 3.2, 9.5; DD 2.1

- instructions, HAC 4.8; IAQ 7.2, 8.6
- program(s), COM 2.1, 3.3, 5.2, 6.3, 9.2
- requirements, COM 2.1, 6.3, 7.6
- scheduling, APP 3.44
- Maintenance Load, RNDC iii, 4.1, 4.5, 4.6, 4.9, 4.11, 5.1, 5.4, 5.5, 6.1, 6.6, 7.1, 7.5, 7.8, 7.16, 7.23, 7.33, 8.3, 8.4, 8.5, 8.25, 8.54, 8.55, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.34, 9.35, 9.36, 10.3, 10.5, 10.34, 10.35, 11.7, 11.8, 11.9, 11.18, 11.20, 11.21, 11.30, 11.31, 11.33, 11.42, 11.43, 11.45, 11.54, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 12.13, 12.17, 12.22, 12.23, 12.58, 12.60, 13.16, 17.6, 17.8, 17.10, 17.15
- Make-up air, KVS 1.3, 2.6, 2.8
 - direct fired units, KVS 4.6
 - duct systems, KVS 3.1
 - equipment, KVS 4.5
 - indirect fired units, KVS 4.6
 - unit types, KVS 5.6
- Management, MGW 4.1
- Management Information System, APP 3.44
- Management team, IAQ 6.2, 6.6
- Mandatory TAB Work, TAB 15.10; TABPG 5.10
- Manifold, KVS 2.4
- Manometer, LTM 5.1, A.12; TAB 11.1, 11.9
 - electrical, TAB 11.2, 11.9
 - inclined/vertical, TAB 11.1, 11.9
 - instrumentation references, LTM A.18
 - liquid properties, LTM A.17
 - U-Tube, TAB 11.1
- Mansard, ASMM 6.41
- Manual Calculation Process, RNDC 1.2, 8.1, 8.2, 8.4, 8.5, 8.54, 9.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.5, 9.34, 10.1, 10.2, 10.4, 10.5, 11.1, 11.55, 12.58
- Manuals, technical, See SMACNA publications
- Manufacturers, BSAR 8.15; KVS 1.4
 - catalogs, TAB 12.1
 - instructions, FSDG 5.3
 - shop review, FRP 7.8
- Manufacturer's Catalogs, TABPG 2.1
- Market, BSAR 1.4, 1.5, 5.1
- Marketing, BSAR 1.1, 1.5, 1.7, 1.12, 2.22, 2.24, 3.12, 4.4, 5.6, 6.4, 7.7, 8.16
- Masking (odors), APP 2.22
- Mass, DD 15.8
- Mass law (sound), DD 11.2, 15.10
- Master, TAB 4.6
- Mastic, FGDC 3.3
- Material, PVC 4; RCDC 2.2
 - basic plastic compound, PVC 4
 - coating, MGW 6.3
 - extruded duct, PVC 5
 - requirements, MGW 6.3
 - rigid sheets, PVC 4
 - selection, PVC 59
 - specifications, IDC 4



Material (Particulate), RNDC 11, 2.2, 8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 8.5-8.23, 8.24, 8.25, 8.26-8.53, 8.55, 9.1, 9.5, 9.34, 9.35, 9.36, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.5, 10.6-10.34, 10.35, 11.1, 11.2, 11.4, 11.6, 11.7, 11.9, 11.16, 11.17, 11.20, 11.21, 11.28, 11.29, 11.30, 11.33, 11.40, 11.41, 11.42, 11.45, 11.52, 11.53, 12.34, 12.36-12.39, 12.52, 12.56, 12.60, 12.64, 13.1, 13.16, 13.54-13.85, 14.1, 14.2, 14.3, 14.5, 14.6-14.12, 15.17, 15.29, 15.42, 16.4, 16.5, 16.8, 16.9, 16.10, 17.3, 17.4, 17.8, 17.11, 17.12, 17.14, 17.16

Material Handling Procedures, TAB 14.18; TABPG 4.18

Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), IAQ 10.11

Material thickness, RCDC 7.1

- class 1, RCDC 7.1
- class 2, RCDC 7.10
- class 3, RCDC 7.19
- class 4, RCDC 7.28
- load capacity tables, RCDC 7.59

Material types, RCDC 3.1

- aluminum, RCDC 3.1
- galvanized, RCDC 3.1
- stainless steel, RCDC 3.1

Materials, FRP 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2, 2.4, 7.1, 7.7, 9.6, D.4

Materials, decorating, IAQ 3.8

Maximum current, DEHG 3.1

Maximum fan airflow requirements, APP 7.26

Maximum wind load span, LAG 2.11

Maximum zone airflow requirements, APP 7.25

Measured voltage, TAB 3.1

Mechanical

- draft towers, APP 12.16
- engineer, SEIS 3.2
- equipment, APP 2.7
- rooms, IAQ 3.7
- space requirements, APP 2.23
- systems, IAQ 4.2

Mechanical Codes, FSDG 3.1

Mechanical properties, FRP 2.2, 3.3, 5.1, 5.2, 5.9, 6.2, C.1, C.5

Mechanical seals, TAB 8.2

Media filters, APP 2.16

Medium density polyethylene, PVC 66

Medium Temperature Water Systems (MTW), TAB 9.1

MEKP, FRP 2.2, 2.3, 4.4

Metal, MGW 6.3

- application, ASMM 9.8
- roof, ASMM 6.24
- roof and wall design, ASMM 6.1
- specification, ASMM 9.8, 10.2

Metal inert gas, See Gas arc welding metal

Metal(s), RSMG C.13

Methods

- basic balancing, TAB 15.1; TABPG 5.1
- equipment pressure loss, TAB 15.2; TABPG 5.2
- hydronic, TAB 15.1; TABPG 5.1

Metric, ASMM 9.7

- conversion table, DCS A.5; RSMG C.7
- design, DD 8.1
- units, APP 14.21; ESAM 14.4, 16.1, 16.14, 16.17, 16.19, 16.20, 16.21, 23.2; TAB 11.24

Microbial, IAQ 10.1

MIG, See Gas arc welding metal

Minimum

- air quantities, APP 7.26
- gage (thickness), RNDC 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 3.7, 3.10, 6.2, 7.5, 7.13, 7.20, 7.27, 7.28, 8.1, 8.3, 8.5-8.23, 8.26-8.53, 8.55, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6-9.33, 9.36, 10.2, 10.3, 10.5, 10.6-10.34, 10.35, 11.2, 11.7, 11.9, 11.10-11.11, 11.22, 11.23, 11.30, 11.33, 11.34, 11.35, 11.42, 11.45, 11.46, 11.47, 11.54, 15.8, 15.9, 15.11, 15.12, 15.13, 17.12, 17.15
- outdoor air damper, APP 3.20
- temperature water system, APP 10.18

Misalignment of welded seams, RNDC 4.5, 5.4

Mites, IAQ 3.7

Mixed air control, APP 3.6

Mixed air temperature, APP 3.22; TAB 4.6

Mixing plenum, APP 2.3

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Mixing valve(s), APP 10.24
 three-way, APP 3.12, 3.17
 Mixtures, TAB 2.17
 Mode of operation, COM 6.2, 7.2
 Model codes, FSDG 3.1; KVS 2.1
 Modification equal friction method, DD 7.2, 8.2
 Modified design method, DD 7.14, 8.14; TAB 7.10
 Modified high-impact rigid PVC, PVC 66
 Modular extractor, KVS 2.13
 Modulating, TAB 4.6
 control, TAB 4.4
 Modulation, return air fan, APP 2.29
 Modulus of Elasticity, RNDC 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 4.3, 6.1, 7.3, 12.25, 12.62, 17.8, 17.9, 17.12, 17.13
 Modulus of Elasticity Reduction Factor, RNDC 3.9, 3.11, 4.1, 7.2
 Moist Air, TAB 2.6
 Moisture, ASMM 9.30; FGDC 2.1; RSMG C.14; TAB 13.12; TABPG 3.12
 Moisture laden systems, DD 13.1
 Mold, IAQ 3.7, 5.2, 6.11, 10.1
 amplification, IAQ 5.2
 growth odors, IAQ 3.8
 spores, IAQ 3.8
 tests, IAQ 3.8
 Moment of Inertia, See Inertia Moment of
 Motor(s), KVS 2.16; TAB 3.5
 brake power, TAB 3.6
 controls, TAB 3.8
 locations, TAB 5.10
 performance, TAB 3.6
 starters, TAB 3.8
 Movement air, APP 1.5
 Moving curtain filters, APP 2.16
 MSDS, IAQ 3.10
 Mullions, FSDG 6.2, 6.3
 damper, FSDG 2.2
 Multiblade dampers, TAB 4.4, 6.5
 Multiple
 chiller system, APP 10.7
 injection systems, APP 9.38
 thermostats, APP 3.37
 Multiple hoods, KVS 5.5
 Multiple pumps, TAB 8.11
 Multiple tower
 chart, DD 9.12
 exchangers, ESAM 17.5, 17.6
 Multiple zone, TAB 9.7
 Multipurpose occupancies, APP 1.2
 Multistage thermostats, APP 3.11
 Multi-story buildings, RCSI 3.3
 Multizone
 blow through system, APP 4.4
 central station units, APP 4.3
 control systems, APP 4.5

electric control, APP 4.6
 equipment, APP 4.3; RCSI 4.2
 multiBzone equipment, RCSI 4.2, 4.2
 pneumatic control, APP 4.6
 system bypass, APP 4.6
 system operation, APP 4.4
 system(s), APP 4.1
 Multi-zone systems, TAB 7.6, 14.13, 14.13; TABPG 4.13, 4.13
 MYLAR, FRP D.5

N

NAIMA, IAQ 3.8, 10.7
 Nameplate data, TAB 3.5
 Narrowscope duct construction tables, DCS A.11, A.12
 National Codes, DD 1.1
 National Energy Management Institute, COM 4.1
 National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB), See NEBB
 National Fire Codes, FSDG 3.1
 National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), FSDG 3.1
 National Research Council, IAQ 1.1
 National Sanitary Foundation, KVS 2.14
 National Training Fund (NTF), COM 4.1; MGW 1.1
 Natural airflow, TAB 6.9
 Natural convection, TAB 8.14
 Natural Fuel Gas Code, KVS 2.1
 Natural ventilation, IAQ 1.1
 NC curves, DD 11.2, 11.5, 11.6
 NC levels, DD 14.65
 NEBB, BSAR 2.21, 3.17
 NEBB publications, APP 1.10; DCS A.33; IDC 123; LTM A.19; PVC 93; RCDC 9.17
 Negative loss coefficient, DD 5.12, 5.13
 Negative pressures, APP 2.25
 NEMA, FSDG R.2
 NEMI, BSAR 5.5
 Net annual method, ESAM 23.8, 23.9
 Net Positive Suction Head (NPSH), TAB 8.5, 8.6
 Net present value
 method, ESAM 23.8, 23.9
 Neutral, TAB 3.1
 Neutral (sound), DD 11.6
 Neutral zone, APP 3.3
 New buildings, TAB 1.1
 New installation, TAB 13.8; TABPG 3.8
 News release, BSAR 1.9
 Newsletter, BSAR 1.8
 Newspaper, BSAR 1.14
 NEXUSP, FRP 2.5, 3.1
 NFPA, FSDG R.2; KVS 2.14, 2.16
 NFPA 252, FSDG 3.4

NFPA 80, FSDG 3.4
 NFPA 90A, FSDG 3.1, 3.4, 4.1, A.1
 NFPA 92A, FSDG 3.4
 NFPA 96-98, FSDG B.1
 Night set back, APP 3.37
 NIOSH, IAQ 7.2, 9.3, 11.4
 No Load Amps, TAB 3.5
 Noise, See Vibration; DD 3.18; IAQ 1.4, 2.1; MGW 4.3; TAB 9.9
 airborne, DD 11.1, 15.1
 break-in (sound), DD 11.23
 break-out, DD 11.1, 11.23, 15.2
 clean room, APP 9.8
 control, DD 11.1
 criterion curves, DD 11.5, 11.6, 11.11
 frequency distribution, IAQ 2.3
 hearing range, IAQ 2.3
 intensity, IAQ 2.3
 measurements, IAQ 2.3
 Noise and sound control, LAG 2.15
 Noise restrictions, KVS 4.1
 Non mechanical draft towers, APP 12.16
 Non-canopy, KVS 2.5
 Non-changeover induction systems, APP 8.10
 Nonconformities, FRP 8.1
 Non-diversity Systems, TAB 14.4; TABPG 4.4
 Non-sparking construction, TAB 5.8
 Nontransferred, MGW 2.12
 Normal
 operating range, TAB 4.6
 operations, TAB 14.13
 position, TAB 4.3
 Normal Operations, TABPG 4.13
 Normally closed valve, APP 3.13; TAB 4.3
 Normally open valve, APP 3.13; TAB 4.3
 Notice, ASMM v
 Nozzle, APP 3.20
 NPG (Neopentyl Glycol), FRP 2.1
 NPSH Curve, TAB 8.6
 NRCA, RSMG C.15
 NTF, BSAR 5.5

Objectives, IAQ 9.3
 Observations, IAQ 8.1
 Obstructed inlets, DD 6.11
 Obstruction, DCS 2.11
 avoidance, DD 5.21
 Occupancies multi purpose, APP 1.2
 Occupancies single purpose, APP 1.2
 Occupancy Separation, FSDG 2.2
 Occupant(s), BSAR 4.5, 6.1, 8.3
 comfort, IAQ 1.3
 communicating with, OBUC 6.1
 complaints, COM 3.3, 5.4, 9.2, 9.3; COM IAQ 1.3
 discomfort, COM 1.1, 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 5.4
 education (IAQ), OBUC 6.1
 egress, FSDG F.2
 productivity, COM 3.2, 3.3, 5.4
 responses, IAQ 1.3
 Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), KVS 2.14
 Occupied areas locating, OBUC 4.2
 Odor abatement, FRP 1.1
 Odor control, KVS 3.3, 3.4
 Odor(s), IAQ 2.3, 5.3
 external, IAQ 4.1
 human, IAQ 4.4
 masking, APP 2.22
 removal, APP 2.20
 sense of smell, IAQ 2.3
 sensitivities, IAQ 2.4, 3.9
 threshold, IAQ 2.3
 Offgas, IAQ 6.9
 Office equipment, IAQ 6.8
 Office of the State Architect (OSA), SEIS 2.1
 Offset, FGDC 4.4, 5.15
 Offset(s), DCS 2.10; DCS FGDC 2.8
 Ohm's law, TAB 3.1
 Oil, ESAM 1.5, 5.7, 5.9, 5.11, 7.2, 8.7, 10.6, 11.2, 13.3, 14.9, 14.10, 15.1, 15.3, 21.3, 22.7, 23.4, 23.12

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Oil pump, RCSI 11.8
 Once-through systems, APP 10.29; TAB 9.12
 One pipe system, TAB 9.3, 15.5
 One pipe system (diverting fitting), APP 10.19
 One-Pipe, TABPG 5.5
 Opacity, KVS 3.4
 Opaque, FRP 2.4
 Open compressor, APP 12.5
 Open loop control, APP 7.19; TAB 14.2; TABPG 4.2
 Open system curve, TAB 8.8
 Open systems, APP 10.15, 10.22; TAB 2.27, 8.9, 9.12
 Opening protection, FSDG 11.4
 Openings relief air, APP 2.2
 Operating
 conditions, DD 9.6
 costs, APP 1.2; COM 1.1, 3.1; DD 2.1, 2.2
 differential, APP 3.3
 pressure, DCS 1.6; DD 2.1
 Operating controls, TAB 10.4
 Operating manuals, TAB 12.2; TABPG 2.2
 Operating speeds, TAB 8.4
 Operation, BSAR 1.1, 1.3
 Operation thermostat, APP 3.19
 Operation, VAV terminal unit, APP 7.11, 7.17
 Operational monitoring, COM 5.3, 6.3, 6.4, 7.7
 Operations instruction, COM 2.1, 3.4, 5.2, 6.3, 6.4, 7.3-7.6, 9.6
 Operators
 damper, APP 3.13
 Opportunities, IAQ 1.5
 business, IAQ 1.5
 contractors, IAQ 1.6
 Opposed blade damper(s), APP 3.7; TAB 4.4, 6.5
 Optical tachometer, TAB 11.14
 Orange Peel Joint, LAG 3.8
 Organic
 compounds, OBUC 2.2
 Organic peroxides, FRP 2.2
 Organisms, APP 9.30
 Organophosphates, IAQ 3.10
 Orifice, DD 10.5
 coefficients, LTM 5.4
 flow curves, LTM 5.5
 flow rate table, LTM 5.6
 plate, TAB 11.24
 OSHA, BSAR 3.17, 6.4; ESAM 8.2, 8.3; IAQ 6.3, 8.6, 9.3, 10.4; KVS 6.1; MGW 4.3
 OSHPD, SEIS 2.1, B.1
 Outdoor air, APP 3.20
 control, APP 3.20
 damper, APP 3.20
 intakes, APP 2.2
 Outdoor equipment, RCSI 4.8

Outlet Balancing Procedures, TAB 13.5; TABPG 3.5
 Outlet throw, TAB 6.10
 Outlet tube(s), RSMG 1.27
 Outlet(s), ASMM 1.53; DD 3.8; FSDG F.3
 criteria, DD 3.11
 duct elbows, DD 6.4
 ducts, DD 6.1
 exhaust, DD 3.18
 Group A, DD 3.8
 Group B, DD 3.10
 Group C, DD 3.11
 Group D, DD 3.11
 Group E, DD 3.11
 location, DD 3.8
 on the same branch, DD 4.1
 type selection, DD 3.3
 velocity, DD 3.7, 15.9
 Out-of-Roundness, RNDC 4.5, 5.4
 Outside air, TAB 4.6
 Outside air settings, TAB 13.2; TABPG 3.2
 Outside design temperatures, RCSI 2.1
 Overcrowding, IAQ 9.1
 Overhang requirements, KVS 5.2
 Overload protection devices, TAB 3.9
 Overloading, MGW 2.7
 Overpressure relief, APP 9.39
 Owners, KVS 1.1
 Ozone, APP 2.19; BSAR 8.11; IAQ 6.8

P

P3 facility/laboratory, APP 9.3
 Packaged air conditioner, APP 11.2
 Packaged equipment, APP 11.1
 Packing glands, TAB 8.2
 Paint, IAQ 4.1; IDC 40
 application, IDC 52
 color selection, IDC 46
 considerations, IDC 47
 cost, IDC 44
 estimating amount, IDC 51
 evaluation, IDC 46, 48
 primers, IDC 42
 sample specification, IDC 52
 thickness, IDC 44
 types, IDC 47
 Panel(s), ASMM 6.35, 6.59, 6.61
 filters, APP 2.14
 Panel, Cheek, FGDC 5.11, 5.14
 Pans, ASMM 6.9; RSMG 2.1
 Pant fittings, RNDC 15.12
 Pant-Leg, KVS 2.4
 Paraffin wax, FRP 3.1, 4.1
 Parallel, TAB 4.6
 blade, TAB 6.5

blade dampers, TAB 4.4
 circuits, TAB 3.1
 flow airstreams, TAB 2.3
 Parallel blade dampers, APP 3.7
 Parallel chiller operation, APP 10.7
 branches, DCS 2.8
 Parallel flow, ESAM 2.1, 16.3, 17.4, 17.6, 18.11
 airstreams, TAB 2.3
 Parallel type, TAB 14.10; TABPG 4.10
 Parapet, ASMM 6.57
 Partial Penetration Joint, RNDC 1.1, 8.4, 9.5, 10.5,
 14.1, 14.2, 17.6, 17.10
 Particle board, IAQ 10.11
 Particle(s), APP 9.3
 attachment, IAQ 3.4
 counting, APP 9.13
 density, IAQ 3.4
 size, APP 2.13, 9.2
 types, IAQ 3.4
 Particulate(s), See Stack sampling facilities, See
 Material (Particulate); IAQ 5.3, 10.1, 11.4
 air, OBUC 2.2
 airborne, IAQ 5.3
 control, KVS 3.4
 sampling, IDC 64
 Partnering, COM 5.3
 Pathways, IAQ 8.6
 Patina, RSMG B.2
 PAW, See Plasma arc welding
 Payback, BSAR 1.16, 2.30, 3.18, 4.4, 5.7, 6.5, 7.8,
 8.18; ESAM 1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 2.2, 2.8, 8.5, 10.1, 10.2,
 10.3, 10.4, 12.1, 21.4, 23.1, 23.2, 23.4
 period, BSAR 1.18
 Penetrations, ASMM 6.35; FSDG 3.2; LAG 3.20
 diagonal, FSDG 6.5
 multiple, FSDG 6.4
 Penthouse, ASMM 7.18
 Perceived problems, IAQ 2.1
 Percentage cycle repeater timers, APP 3.15
 Perceptions, IAQ 3.10
 Perfect gas, TAB 2.7

Performance
 checklists, COM 1.1, 6.2, 6.3, 7.3-7.6
 environmental, COM 2.1, 8.1
 functional, COM 1.1, 2.1, 3.2, 4.2, 5.2, 5.3,
 6.1-6.3, 7.3-7.6, 8.1, 9.2
 operational, COM 5.2, 5.3
 requirements, DCS 1.3
 tests, COM 2.1, 3.2, 4.2, 5.3, 6.1-6.3, 7.3-7.6,
 8.1, 9.2; KVS 5.7, 7.2
 verification, COM 2.1, 3.4, 7.3-7.6, 8.1, 9.2,
 9.6
 Performance check, KVS 7.1
 Performance contracting, ESAM 12.1
 Performance criteria, KVS 3.1
 Performance data, TAB 12.1; TABPG 2.1
 Perimeter heating systems, APP 7.28
 Perimeter installations, DD 3.12
 Periodic sampling, IAQ 12.3
 Pesticides, IAQ 3.9, 3.10
 notification, IAQ 3.11
 old, IAQ 3.11
 Phantom System Curve, TAB 5.19
 Phase change materials, APP 13.8
 Photoelectric Light Obscuration Detector, FSDG E.1
 Photoelectric Light Scattering Detector, FSDG E.1
 Physical Properties, RNDC 1.2, 1.3, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5,
 3.6, 3.10, 7.10, 7.17, 7.23, 7.30, 12.2, 12.6, 12.12,
 12.14, 12.15, 12.16, 12.18-12.20, 12.82, 16.6, 17.8,
 17.12
 Pilot piston valve, APP 3.11
 Pilot-bleed type controller, APP 3.18
 Pimples, FRP 3.3, 7.1
 Pinholes, FRP 3.3
 Pipe
 balance fittings, RCSI 4.8
 bracing, SEIS 2.3
 drains, RCSI 4.8
 friction loss, RCSI 11.3
 gas furnaces, RCSI 11.7
 hot gas, RCSI 11.5
 insulation, RCSI 11.5

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- liquid line piping, RCSI 11.6
- material, RCSI 11.3
- oil, RCSI 11.8
- piping, RCSI 4.7
- refrigerant, RCSI 11.5
- sizing, RCSI 11.5, 11.7; TAB 9.13
- suction line, RCSI 11.6
- Pipe Lock Grooved Seam, RNDC 8.1, 10.1
- Piping
 - circuit, TAB 3.1
 - hot gas, APP 12.6
 - induction, APP 8.7
 - noise, RCSI 11.1
 - refrigerant, APP 14.29
 - steam, APP 14.25
 - suction, APP 12.5
 - systems, TAB 2.26
 - water, APP 14.23
- Piping classifications, TAB 9.1
- Piping connections, TAB 9.17
- Piping designations, TAB 9.15
- Piping System, TABPG 5.1
- Piping System Balancing, TAB 15.1, 15.4; TABPG 5.4
- Pitch, DD 15.9; TAB 9.6
- Pitot Tube, TAB 5.18, 11.4, 11.9, 12.7, 13.11; TABPG 2.7
 - traverse, TAB 13.5
- Pitot Tube Traverse, TABPG 3.5
- Pitot tubes, TABPG 3.11
- Pizza oven, KVS 4.2
- Plan
 - marketing, BSAR 1.4
 - proposal, BSAR 1.10
- Planter box liners, ASMM 8.36
- Plaster, KVS 3.2
- Plastics, PVC vii
 - applications, PVC viii
- Plate loss coefficients, DD 6.42
- Plenum, DCS 6.2
 - access doors, DCS 6.16
 - chamber (sound), DD 11.31
 - construction standards, DCS 6.2
 - extended, DD 4.4, 7.21, 8.21
 - mixing, APP 2.3
 - semi-extended, DD 7.23, 8.23
- Plotting conditions, TAB 2.10
- Plug, MGW 5.7
- Pneumatic
 - control system operation, APP 3.15
 - control systems, APP 3.15; ESAM 5.4, 5.6, 5.7; TAB 4.1, 4.9
 - controllers, APP 3.10
 - controls, APP 3.14
 - operator, APP 3.13, 3.16

- switches, APP 3.14
- system components, APP 3.15
- systems, APP 3.8
- transducer, APP 3.10
- Pneumatic-electric relays (PE switches), APP 3.14; DEHG 6.1
- Policy, IAQ 1.5, 6.6
- Polishes, IAQ 4.1
- Pollutant(s), BSAR 6.1; ESAM 14.2, 17.7, 17.10, 22.5
 - Outside air, IAQ C.1
 - record, IAQ A.14
- Polymerized, FRP 2.3, 2.3
- Polypropylene, PVC 67
- Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC), DD 12.5; PVC 62
 - classification, PVC 62
 - corrosive resistance, PVC 71, 77
 - extrusion, PVC 65
 - flammability, PVC 75
 - press lamination, PVC 64
 - properties, PVC 62, 69
 - roller lamination, PVC 64
 - sheet production, PVC 64
 - solvent cements, PVC 54
 - welding rod, PVC 65
- Polyvinyl steel (PVS), DD 12.5
- Porous material, IAQ 3.8
- Porous surfaces, IAQ 5.2
- Positioning relays, APP 3.14
- Positive displacement pumps, APP 10.12
- Potentiometers, APP 3.14
- Power, TAB 12.6; TABPG 2.6
 - AC, MGW 3.2
 - consumption, DEHG 3.1
 - controllers, APP 3.14
 - conversion, MGW 3.2
 - DC, MGW 3.2
 - sources, MGW 3.2
- Power roof ventilators, TAB 5.4
- Preheat, DEHG 2.1
- Preheat coil, APP 2.4
 - control, APP 3.23
- Preheater, APP 2.4
- Pre-Insulated lagging panel, LAG 2.14
- Preliminary
 - duct layout, DD 4.2
 - layout, DD 4.2
- Preparation, FGDC 3.3
- Present worth
 - analysis, BSAR 1.19, 1.21
- Pressure, See Relief vents; TAB 2.21, 6.1
 - changes in ducts, DD 5.11
 - class designation, DCS 1.4; DD 4.6
 - classification, DD 2.4
 - controlled expansion valve, APP 12.4

differential
 controller, APP 3.31
 hydronic, APP 10.26
 table, LTM 5.6
 independent boxes, TAB 6.3
 loss system components, DD 9.1
 losses, See Pressure loss
 losses in elbows, DD 5.13
 negative, APP 2.25; FGDC 5.10
 Positive, FGDC 5.5
 pump, APP 10.13
 reducing valves, TAB 6.3
 relationships, TAB 8.5
 sensing elements, APP 3.9
 units, APP 7.12, 7.12
 VAV terminal unit, APP 7.27
 velocity (Vp)
 classification, DCS 1.4, 1.6
 Pressure drop, TAB 9.9, 9.9, 9.14
 Pressure gage, TAB 11.9, 13.11
 calibrated, TAB 11.9
 differential, TAB 11.10
 location, TAB 8.11
 magnehelic, TAB 11.5
 Pressure Gages, TABPG 3.11
 Pressurization, IAQ 4.2
 Pressurization control, APP 2.25
 building, APP 2.25
 complex stairwell, APP 9.39
 simple stairwell, APP 9.39
 stairwell, APP 9.40
 Pressurized Stairway, FSDG F.1
 Pre-start
 checks, COM 1.1, 3.2, 6.1, 7.4
 problems, COM 6.1, 6.3, 7.4
 Prevention, IAQ 10.1
 Price, BSAR 1.4, 8.14
 Pricing and estimating
 design, KVS 5.1
 Primary, TAB 15.11
 heat, DEHG 2.1

 secondary pumping, APP 10.25
 Primary Loop, TABPG 5.11
 secondary systems, TAB 15.11
 Primary-Secondary Systems, TABPG 5.11
 Primers, IDC 42
 Proactive, IAQ 1.4, 1.6
 management, IAQ 1.4
 Problem identification, COM 3.1, 5.2, 5.4, 6.2, 9.2
 Problems
 avoidance, IAQ 9.1
 classification, IAQ 7.1
 energy savings, IAQ 9.2
 patterns, IAQ 9.1
 Procedures
 duct sizing, DD 7.1, 8.2
 outlet selection, DD 3.12
 selection stack design, GSSC 3.1
 Process
 plant, APP 3.2
 Process Exhaust Air Systems, TAB 14.17; TABPG 4.17
 Processes, MGW v
 carbon arc, MGW 2.2, 2.3
 flux-cored arc, MGW 2.2, 2.9
 gas metal arc, MGW 2.2, 2.8
 gas tungsten arc, MGW 2.2, 2.6
 heliarc, MGW 2.5
 plasma arc, MGW 2.11, 7.2
 shielded metal arc, MGW 2.2, 2.4
 submerged arc, MGW 2.13
 TIG, MGW 2.5
 Productivity, IAQ 1.3, 1.4, 1.5
 Program
 time switches, APP 3.15
 Programmable thermostat, RCSI 9.2
 Project coordination, KVS 6.1
 Project drawings, TAB 12.5; TABPG 2.5
 Projected Beam-Type Detector, FSDG E.1
 Promotion, BSAR 1.4
 Propeller fans, TAB 5.2
 Proportional

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- action, APP 3.3
- band, APP 3.19
- control, APP 3.1, 3.3
- flow terminal unit, APP 7.15
- relays, APP 3.14
- valves, APP 3.4
- Proportioning control, DEHG 6.1
- Proposal, BSAR 1.1, 1.17, 2.3, 2.26, 5.6
- Proprietary connectors, SEIS 3.2, 3.2
- Proprietary products, MGW vii
- Prospect sources, BSAR 1.12
- Prospecting, BSAR 2.26
- Prospects, BSAR 1.12
- Protection board, FSDG 9.4
- Protective coatings, See Paint; IDC 40
- Provisions for TAB, APP 2.22
- Psychosocial, IAQ 1.4
- Psychrometer, TAB 11.20
- Psychrometric(s), TAB 2.6
 - charts, ESAM 20.4; TAB 2.8
 - pipe bracing, SEIS 2.3
- Public relations, BSAR 1.4, 1.13
- Publications, ASMM 9.38; BSAR 1.15
- Pump
 - amperage, TAB 15.3
 - check, TAB 15.4
 - construction features, TAB 8.2
 - curve verification, TAB 15.3
 - curves, TAB 8.7, 15.1, 15.2, 15.10
 - drives, TAB 8.4
 - head, TAB 8.4
 - laws, TAB 2.27, 8.1
 - location, TAB 9.8
 - measurements, TAB 15.4
 - pressure, TAB 8.4
 - rotation, TAB 8.4
 - selection, TAB 9.14
 - types, TAB 8.1
- Pump Amperage, TABPG 5.3
- Pump Check, TABPG 5.4
- Pump Curve Verification, TABPG 5.3
- Pump Curves, TABPG 5.1, 5.3, 5.10
- Pump Measurements, TABPG 5.4
- Pump(s), APP 2.1; BSAR 3.16; RCSI 4.6
 - air control, RCSI 4.7
 - bypass, APP 3.31
 - connections, RCSI 4.7
 - curves, APP 10.14
 - equations metric, APP 14.16
 - paraffin wax, FRP 3.1, 4.1
 - positive displacement, APP 10.12
 - pressure(s), APP 10.13
 - secondary, APP 3.24
 - selection, APP 10.27; RCSI 11.3
 - solar heat, APP 11.13

- Pumping
 - primary secondary, APP 10.25
 - problems, TAB 8.5
- Purging, smoke, APP 9.37
- Purpose, LAG 1.1
- PVC, See Polyvinyl Chloride
- PVC ductwork, See Duct; PVC 52
- Pyrolysis, FSDG F.1

Q

- Quadrants, TAB 6.6
- Qualifying, BSAR 1.9
- Quality, BSAR 5.1, 5.7, 6.4
 - considerations, MGW 7.3
 - control, FRP 1.2, 3.3, 7.9, 8.1, D.5
 - resin catalyzed, FRP 7.3
 - testing, MGW 10.2
- Quick opening, APP 3.5

R

- Radiant panels, ESAM 4.4, 4.5, 4.6
- Radiation, MGW 4.2; TAB 2.2
 - damper, FSDG 2.2
 - finned tube, APP 10.2
 - units, TAB 8.14
- Radio, BSAR 1.9, 1.14
- Radon, IAQ 4.1, 5.4
- Rails, KVS 6.2
- Rainfall, ASMM 1.1
 - data, ASMM 1.2
- Range hood exhaust ducts, DD 13.1
- Range hood systems, See Hoods
- Rated pressure, PVC 6, 10
- Rating air cleaners, APP 2.12
- Reactions, IAQ 3.7
- Rebalance, BSAR 3.19
- Receiver, TAB 10.3
- Receiver room sound corrections, DD 11.43
- Reciprocating
 - chillers, APP 10.8
 - compressors, APP 11.15, 12.5
 - systems, APP 12.1
- Recommissioning, BSAR 5.1, 5.3, 5.6, 6.2, 8.4, 8.9; COM 1.1, 3.3, 3.4, 5.2, 9.1-9.6
 - analysis, COM 5.4, 9.3, 9.5
 - cooling loads, COM 9.1-9.3, 9.5
 - documentation
 - confirming, COM 9.1-9.3
 - creating, COM 9.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.6
 - existing, COM 9.1
 - equipment data, COM 9.2-9.5
 - modifications phase, COM 9.1, 9.5, 9.6
 - outside air ventilation, COM 9.4, 9.5
 - plan, COM 9.1, 9.2, 9.6

retraining operations personnel, COM 9.6
space heating, COM 9.1, 9.3, 9.5
survey phase, COM 5.4, 9.1-9.6
test and balance reports, COM 9.2-9.5
tests, COM 9.1, 9.2, 9.5, 9.6
tests phase, COM 9.1, 9.2, 9.6
Records, BSAR 8.9
Records maintenance, IAQ 6.3
Rectangular duct, See Transverse joints; DCS 1.12;
FRP 1.1, 6.1, 6.9, 7.2, 7.4-7.8; PVC 10; TAB 2.23
(sound), DD 11.24
arrangement, PVC 27
beaded, DCS 1.45
box lock, DCS 1.51
closures, DCS 1.5
conditions, DCS 7.8
configuration, DCS 7.9
connections, RCDC 8.1
construction, PVC 17, 31
corners, FRP 7.2
criteria, DCS 7.8
crossbroken, DCS 1.45
deflection measurement, DCS 7.10
diagram, RCDC 4.3
dimension, PVC 10
direction, RCDC 4.2
elbows, DCS 2.3
evaluation, DCS 7.11
features, PVC 23
flanges, DCS 1.52; PVC 23; RCDC 8.7
formula derivation, RCDC 9.1
functional criteria, DCS 7.2
gooseneck, DCS 5.8
government lock, DCS 1.51
hangers, PVC 20
inside slip joint, DCS 1.55
intermediate reinforcement, DCS 1.13, 1.23
joint performance testing, DCS 7.8
joints, RCDC 8.1
load, RCDC 4.1
longitudinal seams, DCS 1.39; RCDC 8.1

materials, RCDC 2.2
offset, PVC 33
on all sides, DCS 1.47
on two sides, DCS 1.46
over 96" wide, DCS 1.49
performance criteria, DCS 7.2
pocket locks, DCS 1.51
positive or negative pressure, PVC 11
rated pressure, PVC 10
reinforced, DCS 1.12
reinforcement, DCS 1.15, 1.48
rigidity class, PVC 10
sequence, DCS 7.8
size, RCDC 4.6
slip and drives, DCS 1.5
spacing, RCDC 4.5, 7.59
standing seams, DCS 1.54
stiffener, RCDC 4.5
tables, DCS 1.16; DD 6.14; RCDC 7.1, 7.37,
7.37, 7.46, 7.46, 7.56, 7.59, 7.61
thickness, RCDC 7.1, 7.10, 7.19, 7.28
transverse joint reinforcement, DCS 1.13, 1.24
types, RCDC 3.1
unit conversion, RCDC 4.2
units, RCDC 4.2
unreinforced, DCS 1.12, 1.42, 1.44
vanes, DCS 2.4
Reducers, DD 5.9; RNDC 12.33, 15.13
Reentrainment, IAQ 3.1
References, APP iv; BSAR 1.24, 2.31, 3.19, 4.6, 5.7,
6.6, 7.9, 8.19; DCS v; FSDG R.1; IDC 95; MGW v,
4.4, 5.10, 9.3; OBUC A.1; PVC xv, 4, 51
Refrigerant(s), TAB 9.12, 10.4
cautions, BSAR 8.12
cycle, APP 12.1
design, RCSI 11.6
gas, RCSI 11.7
listing, BSAR 8.13
piping, APP 14.29
retrofit, BSAR 8.17
substitutes, BSAR 8.11

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



temperature, APP 12.1
 types, BSAR 8.11
 venting, RCSI 11.7
 Refrigeration, ESAM 1.3, 1.5, 1.6, 2.1, 2.4, 2.5, 2.6, 2.7, 4.1, 4.7, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 5.6, 5.10, 5.15, 8.1, 8.6, 8.7, 11.1, 15.1, 15.2, 16.20, 17.1, 20.5, 20.6, 21.3, 21.5; TAB 10.1, 10.2
 certification, BSAR 8.16
 commercial, BSAR 2.20
 control, APP 3.35
 cycle, TAB 10.2
 design, RCSI 11.6
 recovery, BSAR 8.11
 systems, APP 12.1; BSAR 3.18; TAB 10.1
 Refuge areas, APP 9.43
 Register, FGDC 4.12
 Register connections, DCS 2.18
 Reglet, RSMG 2.3
 Regulations, FSDG 3.1
 Reheat, DEHG 2.1
 coil, APP 2.4; TAB 12.7
 induction, APP 8.1
 system, APP 6.1
 Reheat Coil, TABPG 2.7
 Reinforcement, See Duct reinforcement; FRP 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.5, 3.1, 5.1, 5.2, 6.2, 7.1, 7.2, 7.7, C.1, D.5; IDC 25
 angle, IDC 26
 attachment, DCS 1.48
 bar, IDC 29
 Channel, FGDC 5.6, 5.7, 5.9; IDC 29
 hat section, IDC 29
 I-beam, IDC 29
 openings in stack, GSSC 6.5
 steel filter housing, IDC 27
 Throat, FGDC 5.13
 Tie Rod, FGDC 5.1, 5.2
 Transition, FGDC 5.16
 transverse joints, DCS 1.13, 1.24
 Trunk, FGDC 5.13
 Reinforcement, Access Doors, FGDC 5.17
 Reinforcing member, See specific material
 Relative humidity, TAB 2.9
 Relays
 electro-pneumatic (EP switches), APP 3.14
 pneumatic-electric (PE switches), APP 3.14
 positioning, APP 3.14
 proportional, APP 3.14
 switching, APP 3.14
 two-position, APP 3.14
 Release film, FRP D.5
 Relief
 air openings, APP 2.2
 devices, TAB 10.4
 disc, IDC 57

 pivoted door, IDC 57
 vents, IDC 56
 Remote bulb, APP 3.9
 Remote heating and cooling coil installations, DCS 2.12
 Renewable media filters, APP 2.16
 Renovation, IAQ 10.5
 Repeat-cycle timers, APP 3.15
 Replacement air, KVS 1.2
 Report forms, TAB 12.5, 13.3, 15.4, 15.7; TABPG 2.5, 3.3, 5.4, 5.7
 Report, sample, COM F.1
 Requirements, FRP 1.1, 1.2, 3.3, 5.1, 5.2, 6.1, 6.2, 6.9
 ceiling assemblies, FSDG 11.4
 Research, BSAR 1.6, 1.7; ESAM 1.1, 1.4, 10.1, 17.7, 18.6, 21.4
 Reset rate, APP 3.4
 Residential
 system design, DD 4.4
 Residential Systems, DD 4.4
 Resin, FRP 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 6.1, 8.3, D.5
 catalyzed, FRP 1.2, 2.1, B.1
 chlorendic, FRP 2.1
 halogenated, FRP 2.4
 isophthalic, FRP 2.1
 orthophthalic, FRP 2.1
 polyester, FRP 2.2
 thermosetting (or Thermoset), FRP B.1, E.1
 Resistance element, APP 3.9
 Resistances, TAB 2.4
 Responsibilities, LTM 2.1
 contractor, LTM 1.3, 2.1
 designer, LTM 2.1
 occupant, IAQ 12.1
 owner, IAQ 12.1
 Restrictions, FGDC 2.1
 building construction, KVS 5.1
 Retaining Angle, FSDG 5.1, 5.2, 5.3
 Retrofit, BSAR 1.17, 2.11, 8.11; ESAM 2.9, 3.1, 3.2, 4.6, 5.6, 5.9, 8.7, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, 10.5, 10.7, 11.2, 15.2, 15.3, 16.4, 18.3, 18.15
 contractor, BSAR 2.1, 2.3, 2.14, 2.25, 2.27
 Return Air Settings, TABPG 3.2
 Return air, KVS 1.3; TAB 4.6
 constant volume, APP 2.17
 duct, DCS 2.2
 duct example, DD 5.11
 duct systems, TAB 7.11
 fan, APP 2.4, 2.27
 inlet, RCSI 8.3; TAB 6.14
 inlet(s), DD 9.14
 modulation, APP 2.29
 registers, DD 9.14
 settings, TAB 13.2

system pressure, DD 5.10
 system sizing, DD 7.12, 8.12
 thermostats, APP 3.36
 Return air inlets
 rectangular duct, FRP 1.1, 6.1, 6.9, 7.2, 7.4, 7.8
 rectangular duct corners, FRP 7.2
 Return on investment method, APP 1.2; ESAM 12.1, 14.8, 14.8, 23.4
 Return registers, TAB 6.15
 Return systems, TAB 9.16
 Reverse acting controllers, APP 3.10; TAB 4.6
 Reverse return, TAB 15.5
 Reverse-Return, TABPG 5.5
 Reversible, APP 3.12
 Reviews, IAQ 9.1
 RIDCS Software Process, RNDC iii, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 3.1, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 3.10, 8.1, 8.2, 8.4, 8.5, 8.54, 9.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.34, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.5, 10.34, 11.1, 12.1, 12.21, 12.28, 12.52, 12.56, 12.58, 13.16, 17.1
 Rigid board, KVS 3.3
 Rigidity, FGDC 3.1
 Rigidity class, PVC 6
 joints and reinforcements, PVC 14
 Rise, TAB 3.6
 Riser, FGDC 6.6
 exhaust, FSDG 12.1
 joints, SEIS 3.3
 return duct, FSDG 12.1
 Rod-and-tube element, APP 3.9
 Roof, See Also Metal roofs; ASMM 1.1; RSMG 1.1
 batten seam, ASMM 6.13
 bermuda, ASMM 6.17
 conical, ASMM 6.47
 deck, ASMM 6.5
 domes, ASMM 6.47
 flat seam, ASMM 6.7
 mansard, ASMM 6.43
 ornamental, ASMM 6.45; RSMG 4.1
 panels, ASMM 6.35
 penetrations, KVS 6.2

pitched, RSMG 1.3
 profiles, ASMM 6.5
 residential, RSMG 1.1
 scuttles, ASMM 8.12
 sloped, ASMM 1.7
 specification, ASMM 9.21
 standing seam, ASMM 6.9
 support, ASMM 6.3
 test report, ASMM 9.14
 transitions, ASMM 6.15
 valley, RSMG 1.34
 ventilators, TAB 5.4
 Roof-Ceiling Assembly, FSDG 2.1
 Rooftop duct installation, DCS 5.6
 Rooftop equipment installation, DCS 5.6, 5.7
 Rooftop termination, KVS 4.3
 Rooftop units
 flashing, DCS 5.7
 Room
 absorption, DD 11.3, 11.44
 criterion curves, DD 11.3, 11.5, 11.8
 Rotary compressors, APP 11.16, 12.5
 Rotary dehumidifiers, APP 9.16
 Rotary wheel
 chart, DD 9.12
 exchangers, ESAM 18.4, 18.9
 Rotating mandrel, FRP D.2
 Rotating vane, TAB 11.5
 anemometers, IDC 88, 90, 92
 Rotation, TAB 3.5, 5.8
 Rotation measuring instruments, TAB 11.12
 Roughness factors, DD 14.8
 Round and Rectangular Flue, LAG 3.11
 Round duct, See specific parameters, See Pre-formed round duct; DCS 3.1; FRP A.1, C.1, C.5; PVC 6; RCSI 7.1
 (sound), DD 11.26
 aluminum schedule, DCS 3.7
 area table, DCS A.11
 circumference table, DCS A.11
 conical tees, DCS 3.12

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



construction standards, DCS 3.1
 diameter, DCS A.11
 elbows, DCS 3.1; PVC 17, 30
 features, PVC 23
 fitting classes, DCS 3.1
 hangers, PVC 20
 joints, DCS 3.9
 laterals, DCS 3.11
 longitudinal seams, DCS 3.8
 mitered elbow schedule, DCS 3.1
 rated pressure, PVC 6
 reinforcement negative pressure, DCS 3.5; PVC 7
 reinforcement positive pressure, PVC 6
 rigidity class, PVC 6
 seams, DCS 3.8
 steel gauge schedule, DCS 3.3
 supports, DCS 4.8
 tees, DCS 3.11
 transverse joints, DCS 3.9
 Round elbow, LAG 3.16
 Round tee, LAG 3.14
 RTP (Also see FRP and GRP), FRP 1.1
 radiant panels, ESAM 4.4, 4.5, 4.6
 refrigerant, ESAM 5.15, 15.1, 15.2, 17.12
 Rumble(sound), DCS 1.7, 7.16; DD 11.7
 Run-around coil exchangers, ESAM 18.14

S

S Cleat, LAG 3.4
 Saddle taps, DCS 3.11
 Safety, FGDC 2.1; FRP 1.2, 2.4, 3.3, 4.4, 5.1, 7.6, 7.7, 7.9, 8.2
 air contamination, MGW 4.2
 cabinets, biological, APP 9.28
 considerations, BSAR 2.16
 control(s), MGW 4.5
 controls, TAB 4.2, 10.4, 15.7
 environmental, BSAR 3.17
 equipment, MGW 3.10
 explosion, MGW 4.3
 factor(s), DCS 7.6; DD 5.5; FRP 1.2, 5.9, C.1; GSSC 6.4; TAB 3.6
 fire, MGW 4.3
 flammable, MGW 4.3
 fumes, MGW 4.2
 gases, MGW 4.3
 guidelines, laboratory, APP 9.20
 heat, MGW 4.3
 issues, RCSI 10.5
 lead, ASMM 9.2
 NFPA, MGW 4.4; RCSI 10.6
 noise, MGW 4.3
 NTF, MGW 4.4
 OSHA, BSAR 3.17

 procedures, MGW 4.4
 references, MGW v
 shock, MGW 4.2
 switches, TAB 3.8
 Safety Factor, RNDC 1.1, 4.2, 4.9, 5.3, 5.5, 5.6, 5.7, 5.8, 5.9, 6.1, 7.2, 8.55, 9.36, 10.34, 11.4, 11.54, 13.1, 13.2
 Safety Solvent, FRP 2.27, 4.4, 8.3
 closing, BSAR 2.26
 objections, BSAR 2.26
 pitch, BSAR 6.5
 stall, BSAR 2.26
 Safety Controls, TABPG 5.7
 Sag, FGDC 5.4
 Sales
 calls, BSAR 2.26
 Sample specification, ASMM 9.21
 Samples
 report, COM F.1
 specification, COM E.1
 Sampling, IAQ 5.1, 8.11
 capture, IAQ 8.1
 carbon dioxide, IAQ 8.6
 methods, IAQ 8.1
 ports, GSSC 5.2
 tube, FSDG E.1
 Saturation line, TAB 2.8
 SBCCI, FSDG R.2
 SBS, IAQ 2.1, 7.1
 Schedule, commissioning, COM A.1
 Scheduling, TAB 12.5; TABPG 2.5
 Scheduling (construction for IAQ), OBUC 3.5
 Scheduling maintenance, APP 3.44
 Schematic Duct System Layout, TABPG 2.3
 Schematics, TAB 12.5; TABPG 2.5
 duct system layout, TAB 12.3
 Scope, FRP 1.1; KVS 1.1; LAG 1.1
 Screens, See Also Louvers; ASMM 1.55, 6.41, 7.41; DCS 5.2, 5.8
 pressure loss chart, DD 9.11
 Screw compressor, APP 12.6
 chillers, APP 10.11
 Scrubbers, KVS 3.3
 Scupper, ASMM 1.29; RSMG 1.2, 2.8
 design, ASMM 1.59, 1.65
 fascia, ASMM 1.63
 installation, ASMM 1.61
 overflow, ASMM 1.65
 Scuttles, ASMM 8.12
 Sealants, DCS 1.8; LTM 1.5
 embedded fabric, DCS 1.12; LTM 1.6
 gaskets, DCS 1.11; LTM 1.5
 heat applied, DCS 1.11; LTM 1.6
 liquids, DCS 1.11; LTM 1.5
 mastics, DCS 1.11; LTM 1.6

safety, DCS 1.12; LTM 1.6
 shelf life, DCS 1.12; LTM 1.6
 strength, DCS 1.12; LTM 1.6
 surface preparation, DCS 1.12; LTM 1.6
 tapes, DCS 1.11; LTM 1.5
 Sealed bellows, APP 3.9
 Seam, FGDC 3.3
 Seams, See Also Longitudinal seams; IDC 22
 longitudinal, IDC 23
 rectangular, IDC 24
 round, DCS 3.8; IDC 23
 Seasonal
 bonding, FRP 3.3, 4.1
 changeover, APP 3.37
 heat source, APP 11.10
 pump, APP 3.24
 Secondary loop, TAB 15.11; TABPG 5.11
 Segmented elbows, PVC 17; RNDC 15.9
 Seismic
 drift, SEIS 3.3
 hazard level (SHL), SEIS iii, 2.1, 2.1, A.1, B.1
 joints, SEIS 3.3
 loads, SEIS 1.1
 zone, SEIS 2.1
 Seismic Restraint Manual, KVS 6.4
 Selection of stiffeners, RNDC 12.1
 Selection procedures, DD 3.12; GSSC 3.1
 Self-contained controls, TAB 4.2
 Selling
 audit, BSAR 2.13, 2.26, 2.29
 direct, BSAR 1.4, 1.13, 1.14
 indoor air quality, BSAR 4.1
 literature, BSAR 1.4
 mail, BSAR 1.4
 retrofit, BSAR 2.24
 Semi-extended plenum, DD 7.23, 8.23
 Semi-hermetic compressor, APP 12.5
 Seminars, BSAR 1.4, 1.9
 Sensible cooling, TAB 2.12

Sensible heat, ESAM 2.2, 16.14, 16.15, 16.16, 16.17, 16.18, 16.20, 18.1, 18.2, 18.3, 18.4, 18.5, 18.6, 18.8, 18.10, 18.14, 18.15, 19.1, 21.3
 storage, APP 13.7
 Sensible heating, TAB 2.12
 Sensing elements, APP 3.9
 humidity, APP 3.9
 Sensing elements pressure, APP 3.9
 temperature, APP 3.9
 Sensitivity, FSDG E.1
 detector, FSDG E.2
 Sensory inputs, IAQ 1.4
 Sequence control mode, APP 3.34
 Series, TAB 4.6
 Series chiller operation, APP 10.8
 Series circuits, TAB 3.1
 Series Loop, TABPG 5.5
 Series loop system, APP 10.18; TAB 9.2, 15.5
 Series pumping, TAB 8.12
 Series S type, TAB 14.9; TABPG 4.9
 Serrated roller, FRP 4.1, D.6
 Service, BSAR 8.10
 Service life, equipment, DD 2.6
 Set point, APP 3.3
 Seven day timers, APP 3.15
 Shaft
 construction, KVS 3.2
 interior, APP 2.24
 smoke, APP 9.42
 Shaft sleeves, TAB 8.2
 Sheaves, TAB 5.10
 Sheet metal(s), RSMG C.1, B.1, A.1, C.5, 2.3, 3.5
 aluminum, ASMM 9.4
 black iron, ASMM 9.1
 copper, ASMM 9.2
 galvanized, ASMM 9.1
 lead, ASMM 9.5
 lead-coated copper, ASMM 9.2
 properties, DD 12.5

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- stainless, ASMM 9.3
- Sheetlead, DCS A.37
- Shell and coil condenser, APP 12.7
- Shell and tube condenser, APP 12.7
- Shell and tube evaporator, APP 12.5
- Shelves, FSE 4.1
- Shield, ASMM 4.46
- Shielding gas, MGW 2.16
- Shingle, ASMM 6.25
- Shiplap, FGDC 3.5
- Shop standards, DCS A.15, A.16, A.17, A.18
- Short radius vanes, DCS 2.6
 - construction, DCS 2.7
 - number, DCS 2.6
- Shut off, TAB 9.5
- Shut off VAV systems, APP 2.29
- Shutdown procedures, COM 6.4, 7.7, 9.6
- SI(metric), FSDG 10.2
- Sick building syndrome, COM 3.2
- Side wall installation, DD 3.13
- Siding, ASMM 6.1, 6.52
- Signaling System, FSDG E.2
- Silicon Controlled Rectifiers (SCR), DEHG 6.1
- Sill installation, DD 3.13
- Simple seated, valve, APP 10.25
- Simple stairwell pressurization, APP 9.37
- Single
 - fan systems, APP 2.26
 - injection systems, APP 9.38
 - path systems, DCS A.25
 - pressure devices, APP 3.18
 - purpose occupancies, APP 1.2
 - seated valve, APP 3.11, 3.16, 10.25
- Single duct cooling only units, APP 7.12
- Single Lock Standing Seam, LAG 3.4
- Single phase circuit, TAB 3.1, 3.3
- Single span, LAG 2.8
- Single-path Systems, TAB 7.1
- Size of Damper, FSDG 5.1
- Sizing
 - dampers, DD 8.7
 - duct worksheets, DD 7.24, 8.24
 - tables, SEIS 2.1
- Skylights, ASMM 8.7
 - plastic, ASMM 8.9
- Slack effect, APP 9.33
- Slate, ASMM 6.25
- Sleeve Gage, FSDG 5.4
- Slip Joint, LAG 3.8
- Slot diffuser applications, DD 3.13
- SMACNA, MGW 4.4
- SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards, KVS 3.1, 5.5, SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards Manual and Seismic Restraint Manual, KVS 6.1

- SMACNA HVAC Systems Duct Design Manual, KVS 5.4, 5.5
- SMACNA Research, DD 5.28
- Small Systems, TAB 9.2
- SMAW, See Shielded metal arc welding
- Smoke, See Fire and smoke dampers; FSDG E.1, F.1
 - barrier, FSDG F.1
 - control, APP 9.35; COM 1.1, 2.1, 5.3; KVS 3.4
 - control system, FSDG F.1, F.2, F.4
 - control zone, FSDG F.1
 - dampers, APP 9.43; FSDG F.1
 - detector, FSDG F.4
 - devices, TAB 11.8
 - exhaust shaft, FSDG F.1, F.4
 - exhaust system, FSDG F.1
 - hatches, ASMM 8.14
 - management, APP 9.35
 - management system, FSDG F.1
 - mechanical control system, FSDG F.1
 - movement, APP 9.33
 - passive control system, FSDG F.1
 - purging, APP 9.37
 - shafts, APP 9.42
 - venting, APP 9.40
 - zone, FSDG F.1
 - zone venting, APP 9.42
- Smoke Barriers, FSDG 2.2
 - vertical, FSDG 4.1
- Smoke control
 - systems, APP 9.32
 - zoned, APP 9.41
- Smoke Control Zone, FSDG 2.2
- Smoke Damper, FSDG 2.2
- Smoke Detector, FSDG E.2
 - area-type, FSDG E.1
 - cloud chamber, FSDG E.1
 - design, FSDG E.2
 - duct-type, FSDG E.1, E.2
 - installation, FSDG E.2
 - line-type, FSDG E.1
 - location, FSDG E.2
 - maintenance, FSDG E.3
 - selection, FSDG E.2
 - spot-type, FSDG E.1
 - terminology, FSDG E.1
- Smoke management, FSDG F.1
 - air flow, FSDG F.4
 - dedicated system, FSDG F.4
 - design tasks, FSDG F.2
 - HVAC system, FSDG F.4
 - terminology, FSDG F.1
- Smoke test, TAB 14.17; TABPG 4.17
- Smokeproof Enclosure, FSDG 2.2
- Smoking, IAQ 4.4, 9.1



Smudging, DD 3.6; TAB 6.9
 Sneeze guard, FSE 7.1
 Snow, RSMG A.1, 1.11, 1.17, 1.32
 Snow guards, ASMM 8.24; RSMG 1.36, 1.37
 Snow Load (Ground), RNDC iii, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.4, 4.6, 4.11, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 6.1, 6.6, 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.5, 7.9, 7.16, 7.23, 7.27, 7.29, 7.33, 17.6, 17.10, 17.15, B.3, B.4
 Solar
 collecting systems, DD 3.13
 heat optimization, APP 3.43
 heat pumps, APP 11.13
 heat source, APP 11.15
 system dampers, DD 13.3
 system sizing, DD 13.1
 systems air based, DD 13.2
 Solenoid, APP 3.12
 Solutions, IAQ 4.4
 Solvents, FRP 2.1, 2.2, 7.10; IAQ 3.9
 Sone, DD 11.3
 Sootblower, LAG 3.42
 Sorbent solutions, ESAM 19.2
 Sound, BSAR 2.21, 7.1; DD 11.1
 absorption, DD 14.82, 15.11
 attenuation, DD 11.31; PVC 56; RCSI 5.1; TAB 6.1
 basics, DD 11.3
 basics of junctions and turns, DD 11.16
 breakout, DD 11.23
 ceiling systems, DD 11.43
 definitions, DD 11.1
 design tables, DD 14.65
 levels, TAB 6.9
 levels, decibels, DD 3.6, 11.3
 limp covering materials, DD 11.30
 lining, DCS v
 paths, DD 11.49
 piping and conduit, RCSI 5.2
 power division, DD 11.41
 rigid covering materials, DD 11.30
 sources, DD 14.66

system design, DD 11.9
 system example, DD 11.45
 transmission, DD 11.43
 trap charts, DD 9.10
 traps, DD 9.10, 11.35
 Source control, IAQ 10.11
 Source elimination, IAQ 3.1, 10.1
 Sources
 occupant, IAQ 4.4
 outside, IAQ 4.1
 Southern Building Code Congress International (SBCCI), FSDG 3.2
 drawings and specifications, FSDG 3.2
 permits, FSDG 3.2
 Space
 acceptability, IAQ 9.2
 charge, APP 2.19
 controllers, APP 3.36
 design, APP 1.4
 evaluation, IAQ 11.5
 requirements, APP 2.22
 Space temperature, TAB 2.3
 Spark arrester, KVS 2.13
 Special duct systems, DD 13.1
 Special HVAC Applications, APP 9.1
 Specific use areas, IAQ 6.8
 Specification(s), ASMM 9.8; MGW 6.2; RCSI 12.1, 12.1
 check list, DD 12.1
 sample, COM E.1; DCS xiii
 sample mechanical, RCSI 12.1
 Specifications, FGDC 3.3
 Specifications guide, PVC 49
 access doors, PVC 53
 air distribution, PVC 52
 air scrubbers, PVC 55
 balancing and adjusting, PVC 56
 bases, PVC 56
 correlation, PVC 50
 damper location, PVC 53
 drain location, PVC 54

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- dust collectors, PVC 55
- equipment identification, PVC 51
- equipment/accessories, PVC 55
- excluded, PVC 49
- expansion joint location, PVC 54
- fans, PVC 55, 57
- filters, PVC 55
- fire dampers, PVC 54
- general provisions, PVC 49
- guarantee, PVC 56
- hoods, PVC 55
- included, PVC 49
- louvers, PVC 56
- materials, PVC 53
- motors, PVC 56
- reference, PVC 51
- size, PVC 53
- sound attenuators, PVC 56
- submittals, PVC 51
- work, PVC 49
- Spiral flat-oval duct, DCS 3.13
- Spiral Lockseam (Duct/Pipe), RNDC iii, 1.2, 1.4, 4.1, 8.2, 8.55, 9.2, 9.36, 10.2, 10.34, 11.1, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5, 11.45, 11.52, 11.53, 11.54, 12.5, 12.21, 12.26, 15.1, 15.2
- Spirally Generated Lockseam, RNDC 1.4, 4.5, 11.4, 11.5, 12.1, 13.1, 15.1
- Spires, ASMM 8.22
- Splash pan, ASMM 1.79
- Splitter, FGDC 4.5, 4.7
 - spacing, DD 5.14
 - vanes, DD 5.14
- Spores, IAQ 5.2
- Spray chop, FRP 2.5
- Sprayed coil systems, APP 3.27
- Spreader sizes, SEIS 2.3
- Spring ranges, APP 3.18
- Spring-return, APP 3.12
- Sprinklers, FRP 7.8
- Square to round transition, LAG 3.18
- Stack construction, GSSC 5.1
 - assembly and fitup, GSSC 5.1
 - bolted connections, GSSC 5.1
 - definitions of terms, GSSC 3.9
 - fabrication and installation, GSSC 5.1
 - metrics use of guide with, GSSC A.1
 - sampling facilities, GSSC 5.2
 - welding, GSSC 5.1
- Stack design, See Stack design criteria; GSSC 3.1
 - base plate and anchor bolts, GSSC 6.5
 - bolts for comp. angle connections, GSSC 6.11
 - criteria, GSSC 6.1
 - details typical (figure), GSSC 3.6
 - example of interpolation, GSSC 6.13
 - ladder installation, GSSC 3.3
 - limitations, GSSC 3.1
 - list of symbols, GSSC A.3
 - material, types of, GSSC 3.5
 - materials, selection, GSSC 4.1
 - openings, GSSC 3.5
 - reinforcement, GSSC 6.5
 - reinforcement (figure), GSSC 3.8
 - stiffeners, GSSC 6.11
 - thickness of stack shell, GSSC 6.2
- Stack design criteria, GSSC 6.1
 - (figure), GSSC 6.7
 - base plate and anchor bolts, GSSC 6.5
 - base plate dimensions (figure), GSSC 4.2
 - design of, GSSC 6.11
 - factors of safety, GSSC 6.4
 - formula derivation, GSSC 6.1
 - length, GSSC 6.10
 - limitations, GSSC 3.1
 - longitudinal compression, GSSC 6.3
 - longitudinal tension, GSSC 6.4
 - reinforcement of openings, GSSC 6.5
 - reinforcement of openings (figure), GSSC 3.8, 6.6
- Stack effect, FSDG F.4; IAQ 3.7
- Stack height
 - 100 feet, GSSC 4.20
 - 120 feet, GSSC 4
 - 20 feet, GSSC 4.3, 4.21
 - 30 feet, GSSC 4.6, 4.24
 - 40 feet, GSSC 4.9, 4.27
 - 50 feet, GSSC 4.12, 4.30
 - 60 feet, GSSC 4.15
 - 80 feet, GSSC 4.19
- Stack sampling facilities, GSSC 5.2; IDC 64
 - elevation view, IDC 66
 - ports, GSSC 5.2; IDC 64
 - power source, GSSC 5.2; IDC 64
 - topview, IDC 67
 - work platform, GSSC 5.2; ID 64
- Stack(s), See Stack construction, See Stack height, See Stack design and Stack design; GSSC 9, 1.1
 - attachment (figure), GSSC 4.34
 - base configuration and dimensions (figure), GSSC 3.1
 - bolt size requirements for companion angle connections, GSSC 435
 - bolt specifications, GSSC A.1
 - companion flange and stiffeners sizes, GSSC 4.33
 - damping, GSSC 3.1
 - design characteristics, GSSC 6.13
 - effect, DD 5.8; IAQ 3.7, effective bolt cross-sectional area for single or multiple bolts, GSSC 6.8
 - heads, DD 3.7



location, GSSC 2.1
opening reinforcement of (figure), GSSC 3.8, 6.6
openings, GSSC 3.5
sampling facilities, GSSC 5.2
sampling facilities elevation view (figure), GSSC 5.4
sampling facilities plan view (figure), GSSC 5.3
stackheads, IDC 11
stiffeners, GSSC 6.1
thru roof, IDC 12
use of, GSSC 4.1
Stainless steel, DD 12.3, 12.4; LAG 1.2, 1.4; RNDC iii, 1.1, 1.2, 1.4, 3.1, 3.2, 3.6, 3.7, 3.8, 3.9, 3.12, 3.13, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 5.1, 5.8, 7.2, 7.3, 7.13, 7.15, 7.17, 7.18, 7.19, 8.24, 9.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.5-9.33, 9.34, 9.35, 9.36, 11.1, 11.2, 11.3, 11.30, 11.33, 11.34, 11.35, 11.36-11.39, 11.40, 11.41, 12.1, 12.2, 12.12, 12.13, 12.14, 12.15, 12.16, 12.23, 12.24, 12.26, 12.26, 12.28, 12.34, 12.52, 12.54, 12.55, 12.56, 12.61, 12.62, 13.1, 13.12, 13.13, 14.5, 14.9, 14.10, 15.29, 17.13; RSMG C.3, C.10
Stair Enclosure Pressurization, FSDG F.4
Stairwell pressurization, APP 9.40
Stamped grilles, TAB 6.12, 6.14
Standard 62-1989, IAQ 1.2, 1.4, 3.8, 4.3, 9.3, 10.4
Standard and Listed, KVS 2.1
Standard Building Code, FSDG 3.1
Standard elbows and mitered joints, FRP 7.3, Standard for the I
nstallation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems, FSDG 3.1
Standard gauge-thickness
alloy 3003.H14, DCS A.5
aluminum, DCS A.5
galvanized steel, DCS A.2
stainless steel, DCS A.4
uncoated steel, DCS A.3
Standards, IAQ 1.1, 1.4; MGW 6.2; PVC 3
applicability, PVC 68
building, BSAR 2.17

clean room, APP 9.13
energy conservation, BSAR 5.1
IAQ, BSAR 4.1
outside, BSAR 10.1
thermal, BSAR 6.4
ventilation, BSAR 5.4, 6.3, 10.1
Standing water, IAQ 3.7
Starting load amps, TAB 3.5
Start-up, TAB 12.2; TABPG 2.2
Start-up procedures, COM 3.2, 7.7, 9.6; KVS 7.1
Static, TAB 2.22
head, TAB 2.19, 2.20, 2.27, 15.3
pressure, TAB 2.21, 2.22, 5.16
Static electricity, FRP 3.1, 7.1
Static Head, TABPG 5.3
Static Pressure, FGDC 2.1; KVS 4.2
class, DCS 1.6
control, APP 3.20, 3.28, 7.30
flags, DD 8.11, 8.20
measurements, TAB 13.5
sensor, TAB 14.3
table, DCS 1.6
Static Pressure Measurements, TABPG 3.5
Static Pressure Sensor, TABPG 4.3
Static regain, DD 4.3
Static suction lift, TAB 8.4
Steam
distribution, TAB 15.8
flow, TAB 9.15
heat, KVS 4.6
piping system, TAB 9.16
properties of, TAB 9.14
strainers, TAB 9.17
system(s), TAB 9.14
traps, TAB 9.17
Steam Distribution, TABPG 5.8
Steam system(s)
boilers, APP 10.6
distribution, APP 3.29
flow, APP 3.4
piping, APP 14.25

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Steam Systems-Medium And High Pressure, TAB 9.18
Steam-to-water heat exchangers, APP 10.11
Steel
 carbon, MGW 2.18, 2.20, 2.26, 2.27
 galvanized, DCS A.2; DD 12.1; MGW 2.26
 stainless, DCS A.4; MGW 2.18, 2.21, 2.27, 2.28
Steel deck frame, See Insulated steel deck frame
Steel duct weight tables, DCS A.8
Steel reinforcement, PVC 26
Steel thickness, SEIS 3.1
Step controller, APP 3.14; DEHG 6.1
Stepped, TAB 4.6
Stiffened solutions, RNDC 4.2, 4.4, 6.4, 7.3, 8.4, 8.54, 9.4, 9.34, 9.35, 10.4, 10.34, 11.2, 17.7, 17.15, 17.16
Stiffeners, See Duct stiffeners; FRP 1.2, 6.1, 6.9, A.5; RCDC 4.5, 8.1
 formula, RCDC 9.5
 reinforcement, RCDC 7.55; RNDC 1.1, 1.2, 1.4, 3.12, 3.13, 4.2, 4.6, 4.7, 4.10, 5.1, 6.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.32, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.26-8.53, 8.55, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.6-9.33, 9.36, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, 10.6, 10.35, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5, 11.8, 11.12-11.17, 11.24-11.27, 11.28, 11.29, 11.31, 11.36-11.39, 11.40, 11.41, 11.42, 11.43, 11.48-11.51, 11.52, 11.53, 11.55, 12.1, 12.2, 12.3, 12.5, 12.6, 12.8, 12.12, 12.13, 12.14, 12.15, 12.16, 12.17, 12.18-12.20, 12.21, 12.22, 12.23, 12.28, 12.48, 12.56, 13.16, 13.54-13.85, 15.39, 16.5, 16.6, 17.3, 17.8, 17.10, 17.12
Storage, FRP 7.1, 8.3; IAQ 10.12; LAG 2.1
 boxes, IAQ 4.3
 fuels, IAQ 3.9
 paper, IAQ 6.8
Storage tanks, RCSI 11.8
 LP gas, RCSI 11.8
 oil, RCSI 11.9
 open vent, RCSI 11.9
 safety devices, RCSI 11.9
Storm covers, DCS 5.9
 exhaust, DCS 5.9
 intake, DCS 5.9
Straight duct
 losses, DD 5.12
 sections, DD 5.9
Straighteners, DD 6.10
Straight-through flow, APP 10.23; DD 6.12, 14.18
 loss coefficients, DD 6.12, 14.18
Straight-through sections, DD 5.17
Strainers, APP 10.17; RCSI 4.7; TAB 9.6, 15.8; TABPG 5.8
Stress, FGDC 2.1
Stressors, IAQ 1.4
Stroboscope, TAB 11.14

Structural engineer, SEIS 3.2, B.1
Structural layer, FRP 1.1, 2.5, 3.1, 3.3, D.6
Structural system, SEIS 2.2
Structure borne noise, DD 11.3
Study of Systems and Data, TAB 12.4; TABPG 2.4
Stuffing box, TAB 8.2
Style hoods, eyebrow, KVS 2.11
Styrene, FRP 4.1, 8.2, 8.3
Subcontractor, BSAR 2.1
Subdividing panels, RCDC 6.1
Subduct, FSDG 12.1, 12.2
Sub-master, TAB 4.6
Submaster thermostat, APP 3.11
Submittal, PVC 51
 review, DD 9.1
Success, IAQ 9.3
Suction, TAB 2.22, 2.23
 head, TAB 2.27, 2.28
 lift, TAB 2.27, 2.29
 piping, APP 12.5; TAB 10.3
 stop valve, TAB 10.3
Summer-winter system(s), APP 10.22; TAB 15.11
Summer-Winter Systems, TABPG 5.11
Summer-winter thermostat, APP 3.11
Sumps, ASMM 1.81
Sun position, RCS 2.9
Superheat, APP 12.3; TAB 10.4
Superimposed Load, RNDC 4.4, 4.6, 6.1, 6.6, 7.1, 7.8, 7.15, 7.16, 7.22, 7.23, 13.54-13.85
Supermarket, BSAR 8.17
Supervisor, MGW 4.2
Supplemental heating, APP 2.4, 11.27
Supply
 air fan, APP 2.6
 air outlet(s), RCSI 8.1
 duct system, DCS 2.2
 fan/exhaust fan combination, APP 2.30
 laboratory, APP 9.19
 modulation, APP 2.17
 opening or outlet, DD 3.2, 3.3, 3.10, 3.19
 outlet performance, DD 3.5
 register, DD 9.14
 system, DD 7.5, 8.4
 system example, DD 7.4, 7.16, 8.4, 8.15
Supply air, KVS 1.3
Supply air duct, TAB 7.9
Supply fan plenum, DD 7.4, 8.4
Supply outlet throttling units, TAB 6.4
Supply outlets, TAB 6.11
Supply registers, TAB 6.15
Supports, DCS 4.1; FGDC 6.1; IDC 30
 adjustable, IDC 33
 angle bracket, IDC 34
 floor, DCS 4.14
 Heater, FGDC 6.7

high temperature duct, IDC 37
 large duct, DCS 4.13
 reinforcement, IDC 33
 riser, DCS 4.14
 trapeze, DCS 4.10
 Vertical, FGDC 6.6
 wall, DCS 4.16
 wall anchor, IDC 35
 Surface area computation, IDC 50
 Surface area tables, DCS A.7, A.11; LTM A.9, A.10
 Surface effect, DD 3.5
 Surface hardness, FRP 3.3, 7.1
 Surface preparation, IDC 40; RNDC 3.14, 12.30,
 12.31, 12.33, 15.5, 15.6, C.2
 abrasive cleaning, IDC 41
 concrete surface, IDC 40
 metal surface, IDC 40
 primers, IDC 42
 Surfacing veil, FRP 2.5, D.6
 Survey, BSAR 2.4, 2.7, 6.2, 7.1
 Surveys
 conducting, IAQ 6.3
 facility, IAQ 6.6
 occupant, IAQ 6.5
 questions, IAQ 6.5
 Swinging vane anemometer, IDC 86
 Switches
 auxiliary, APP 3.14
 pneumatic, APP 3.14
 Switching, relays, APP 3.14
 Symbols, DCS 1.1; DD 4.9; FSE 1.1; IDC 120;
 RCDC 9.15
 air conditioning, DCS 1.2
 curves, DD 5.1
 edge-flange, MGW 5.8
 fillet, MGW 5.5
 groove, MGW 5.4
 Inch-Pound, FSDG 10.1
 intermittent, MGW 5.6
 plug, MGW 5.7
 SI (metric), FSDG 10.2

types, MGW 5.3, 5.12
 ventilation, DCS 1.1
 welding, IDC 120; MGW 36
 Symptoms, IAQ 3.10, 7.1, F.1
 Synergist (Antimony Trioxide), FRP 2.1, 2.4, 7.1
 Synergistic effects, IAQ 2.1
 System
 Analysis, TABPG 2.2
 Components and Types, TABPG 2.2
 Review, TABPG 2.2
 Schematic Drawings, TABPG 2.2
 System airflow, TAB 13.5; TABPG 3.5
 System capacity review, TAB 12.5; TABPG 2.5
 System curve for open circuit, TAB 8.9
 System flow, TAB 15.3; TABPG 5.3
 System powered, TAB 14.13; TABPG 4.13
 System start-up, TAB 13.1; TABPG 3.1
 System(s), APP 3.2; DD 5.1
 absorption, APP 12.10
 air-hydronic, APP 2.1
 all-air, APP 2.1
 all-hydronic, APP 2.1
 all-water, APP 10.1
 analysis, TAB 12.2
 building, BSAR 2.17
 calculating, DD 6.17
 central, APP 2.2
 central control, APP 3.8
 CFC/HCFC, BSAR 8.1
 chilled water, APP 10.18
 closed loop, APP 11.8
 components and types, TAB 12.2
 computerized control, APP 3.39
 condenser, TAB 9.12
 constant volume, APP 2.16, 2.27, 10.23
 cooling tower, APP 10.29, 12.4; TAB 9.13
 cooling tower piping, APP 10.29
 coordination, TAB 13.5
 costs, APP 1.2
 critical, COM 5.2, 5.3, 8.1
 curve, TAB 5.13

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



curve(s), APP 10.14; DD 5.1, 6.2, 6.6
 curves, TAB 2.25
 deficiencies, TAB 13.7
 desiccant dehumidification, APP 9.14
 design, APP 1.1
 design examples, DD 7.1, 8.1
 design for, DD 7.1, 8.1
 design information, PVC 3
 design-dual duct, APP 5.6
 distributed processing, APP 3.42
 diverting fitting, one pipe, APP 10.19
 domestic water, BSAR 2.19
 draw through, APP 4.4
 dual duct (high velocity), APP 5.2
 dual duct (low velocity), APP 5.1
 duct heat loss, RCS 2.7
 effect, DD 5.6
 electrical, BSAR 2.16
 evaporative cooling, APP 12.18
 example (sound), DD 11.45
 exhaust air, APP 9.22
 factors, DCS 2.21
 fan curve interaction, DD 5.1
 four-pipe, APP 8.8
 grease hood, DD 13.1
 heat losses, RCSI 2.3
 high temperature water, APP 10.18
 HVAC, BSAR 2.18
 hybrid, APP 3.8
 hydronic, APP 10.1
 induction, APP 8.1
 kitchen, DD 13.1
 laboratory, APP 9.18
 maintenance modifications, BSAR 2.3
 moisture laden, DD 13.1
 multizone, APP 4.1
 once-through, APP 10.29
 open, APP 1.15, 10.22
 open system, condenser water, APP 10.28
 operating point, TAB 5.14
 operation, BSAR 8.1
 operation, terminal reheat, APP 6.2
 others, BSAR 2.16
 pneumatic, APP 3.7
 pressure changes, DD 5.9
 pressure loss, DD 9.2
 pressures, DD 5.10
 range hood, DD 13.1
 reciprocating, APP 12.1
 refrigeration, APP 12.1
 resistance curve, TAB 5.13
 review, TAB 12.2
 schematic drawings, TAB 12.2
 selection parameters, APP 1.1
 self-powered, APP 3.8

series loop, APP 10.18
 single fan, APP 2.15, 2.26
 single injection, APP 9.38
 smoke control, APP 9.32
 solar, DD 13.1
 sprayed coil, APP 3.27
 summer-winter, APP 10.22
 terminal reheat, APP 6.1
 three-pipe, APP 8.8, 10.20
 true variable air volume, APP 7.2
 two-fan, APP 2.27
 two-pipe, APP 8.7, 10.19
 unitary, APP 2.1, 11.1
 variable air volume, APP 7.1, 7.7
 variable air volume duct, APP 7.27
 VAV, APP 7.2
 VAV and perimeter air, APP 7.10
 VAV reheat, APP 7.4
 wind, DD 5.6

Systems

Coordination, TABPG 3.5
 Deficiencies, TABPG 3.7

T

TAB

air devices, BSAR 3.5
 aspects, BSAR 3.3
 design, BSAR 3.4
 design considerations, DD 10.1
 duct cleaning, BSAR 6.1
 fans, BSAR 3.5
 hoods, BSAR 3.17
 instrumentation, BSAR 3.4, 3.7, 3.8
 manual, BSAR 7.2, 7.7
 marketing, BSAR 3.12
 procedures, BSAR 3.6
 requirements, BSAR 3.2
 specification, BSAR 3.3
 tolerances, BSAR 3.15
 training, BSAR 5.5

TAB instrument selection, TAB 12.5; TABPG 2.5

TAB procedures, TAB 12.5; TABPG 2.5

TAB Report Forms

10-02, TAB 16.17
 1-02, TAB 16.1, 16.4
 11-02, TAB 16.2, 16.18
 12-02, TAB 16.2, 16.19
 13-02, TAB 16.2, 16.20
 14-02, TAB 16.2, 16.21
 15-02, TAB 16.2, 16.22
 16-02, TAB 16.3, 16.23
 17-02, TAB 16.3, 16.24
 18-02, TAB 16.3, 16.25
 19-02, TAB 16.3, 16.26

20-02, TAB 16.3, 16.27
 2-02, TAB 16.1, 16.5
 3-02, TAB 16.1, 16.6
 4-02, TAB 16.1, 16.7
 4-03, TABPG 6.1, 6.8
 5-02, TAB 16.1, 16.8
 6-02, TAB 16.1, 16.9
 7-02, TAB 16.2, 16.10, 16.11
 7-03, TABPG 6.2, 6.11, 6.12
 8-02, TAB 16.2, 16.12, 16.13
 9A-02, TAB 16.14
 9A-02, 9B-02, 9C-02, TAB 16.2
 9B-02, TAB 16.15
 9C-02, TAB 16.16
 preparing, TAB 16.1; TABPG 6.1
 TAB 10-03, TABPG 6.2, 6.18
 TAB 1-03, TABPG 6.1, 6.5
 TAB 11-03, TABPG 6.2, 6.19
 TAB 12-03, TABPG 6.2, 6.20
 TAB 13-03, TABPG 6.2, 6.21
 TAB 14-03, TABPG 6.3, 6.22
 TAB 15-03, TABPG 6.3, 6.23
 TAB 16-03, TABPG 6.3, 6.24
 TAB 17-03, TABPG 6.3, 6.25
 TAB 18-03, TABPG 6.3, 6.26
 TAB 19-03, TABPG 6.3, 6.27
 TAB 20-03, TABPG 6.3, 6.28
 TAB 2-03, TABPG 6.1, 6.6
 TAB 3-03, TABPG 6.1, 6.7
 TAB 5-03, TABPG 6.1, 6.9
 TAB 6-03, TABPG 6.1, 6.10
 TAB 8-03, TABPG 6.2, 6.13, 6.14
 TAB 9A-03, TABPG 6.15
 TAB 9A-03, TAB 9B-03 AND TAB 9C-03),
 TABPG 6.2
 TAB 9B-03, TABPG 6.16
 TAB 9C-03, TABPG 6.17
 TAB Technical/TEAM, TAB 1.1
 TAB technician, TAB 2.25
 TAB/ATC relationship, TAB 4.6
 Table

aluminum sheet, RCSI 7.3
 clearance for connectors, RCSI 10.2
 duct insulation, RCSI 2.13, 7.6
 duct lining, RCSI 7.6
 glycol, RCSI 11.4
 hot food, FSE 11.3
 metal gauges, RCSI 7.1
 noise, RCSI 6.4
 oil storage tanks, RCSI 11.9
 pipe insulation, RCSI 11.5
 round ducts, RCSI 7.2
 steam, FSE 11.3
 supply outlets, RCSI 8.1
 Table Driven Process, RNDC 1.2, 1.3
 Tables and charts, APP 14.1; IDC 96; LTM A.1,
 A.7, A.15; RCDC 7.1
 air volume, IDC 105
 area/circumference of circles, IDC 84, 100
 bolting for flange connections, RCDC 7.62
 circular equivalents of rectangular duct, IDC
 110
 density chart, IDC 115
 duct design, APP 14.1; RCSI 18.1
 duct section properties, RCDC 7.61
 duct stiffeners, RCDC 7.37
 elbow weight 1.5 CLR, IDC 102
 elbow weight 2.0 CLR, IDC 103
 elbow weight 2.5 CLR, IDC 104
 engineering conversion factors, IDC 113
 entrance loss, IDC 107
 fixed corners, RCDC 7.37
 friction charts, IDC 108, 109
 hinged corners, RCDC 7.46
 hole gage for flange connections, RCDC 7.62
 hydronic, APP 14.23
 material thickness, RCDC 7.1
 metric equivalents, IDC 111
 specific heat/weight, IDC 116
 steel structural shapes, IDC 99
 stiffener/reinforcing data, RCDC 7.56
 support spacing, RCDC 7.59

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal		Manual		Under Construction
	Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC)
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis &		Guide for HVAC Systems		Construction Manual
	Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning		and Installation Guidelines		Construction Standards
	Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems		Installation Standards
	Standards Metal and Flexible		Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for		Standards
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for		Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
	Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual –
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and		Guidelines		Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
	Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction		Metal Lagging		and Balancing
	Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- surface formulas, IDC 118
- temperature charts, IDC 115
- triangle solution, IDC 119
- velocity pressure, IDC 106
- volume formulas, IDC 118
- weight of black iron pipe, IDC 101
- weight of steel angles, IDC 97
- weight of steel plate, IDC 98
- weights and measures (U.S.), IDC 112
- welding symbols, IDC 120
- wind conversion, RCDC 7.62
- Tachometer, TAB 11.12
- Tack weld, FRP 4.4
- Take-Off, FGDC 4.5
- Tanks (shells and heads), LAG 3.7
- Tapes, DCS 1.11; FGDC 3.3
- Technical manuals, APP 1.8
- Techniques, BSAR 1.8, 2.24, 3.12, 4.4, 5.6, 6.4, 7.7, 8.16
- Tee, DCS 2.7, 3.11; FGDC 4.5
- Temperature, APP 1.5; FGDC 2.1; IAQ 2.1, 3.8; TAB 13.12; TABPG 3.12
 - joist, FSDG C.2
 - limits, RNDC 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8, 3.9, 3.12, 3.13, 7.28, 7.29, 7.30, 11.5, 12.3, 12.34, 12.59, 12.61, 12.83
 - mixed air, APP 3.22
 - refrigerant, APP 12.1
 - sensing elements, APP 3.9
 - setback controls, APP 3.37
 - surface, FSDG C.2
 - temperature, body range, IAQ 2.1
- Tenant, BSAR 2.11; IAQ 12.1
- Tenanted spaces, IAQ 1.5
- Tensile elongation, FRP 2.2
- Tension zone, SEIS 2.1
- Terminal
 - bypass VAV, APP 7.16
 - unit(s)
 - dual duct, APP 5.4
 - proportional flow, APP 7.15
- Terminal balance, TAB 13.5; TABPG 3.5
- Terminal box, TAB 6.1
- Terminal devices, TAB 12.7; TABPG 2.7
- Terminal Heating and Cooling Units, TAB 8.14
- Terminal reheat
 - control systems, APP 6.4
 - system design, APP 6.3
 - system operation, APP 6.2
 - system(s), APP 6.1; ESAM 2.6, 2.9; TAB 7.4, 7.5
 - units, APP 6.3
- Terminal unit ductwork, TAB 7.11
- Terminal units, TAB 8.14, 14.1; TABPG 4.1
- Termination Methods, FGDC 5.1

- Terminology, FRP 1.2, 7.1; FSDG 2.1; FSE 1.1
- Termite shield, ASMM 4.153
- Terms, MGW 11.1
- Terms and components, TAB 10.2
- Terne, RSMG C.11
- Test apparatus, LTM 5.1
 - flange taps, LTM 5.2
 - precautions, LTM 5.7
 - vena contracta taps, LTM 5.3
- Test holes, TAB 12.7; TABPG 2.7
- Test openings, IDC 60, 63
 - sampling, IDC 60, 63
 - static pressure, IDC 60
 - velocity pressure, IDC 60
- Test port, LAG 3.43
- Test pressure determination, LTM A.5
- Test procedures, See Leakage testing; LTM 3.1
- Test report(s), ASMM 9.14; LTM 6.1
 - example, LTM 6.2
 - procedure, LTM 6.1
- Testing, BSAR 3.1, 7.5; FGDC 2.1; MGW 10.2
 - clean room, APP 9.13
- Testing Adjusting and Balancing (TAB), DD 4.7, 10.1
 - provisions, DD 4.7, 10.1
- Testing Adjusting and Balancing Bureau (TABB), TAB 1.2
- Testing and balancing, COM 2.2, 4.1, 7.2, 9.2-9.5
- Thermal
 - capacity, cooling tower, APP 12.15
 - expansion, RNDC 4.2, 4.9, 5.11, 6.1, 7.2, 7.13, 7.18, 7.19, 7.25, 7.26, 15.27, 16.8, B.9, B.10
 - expansion valve, APP 12.4
 - fluids, APP 10.30
 - performance of a cooling tower, APP 12.14
- Thermal bulbs, TAB 10.3, 10.4, 10.5
- Thermal comfort, IAQ 3.2
- Thermal expansion, SEIS 3.1, 3.3, B.1
 - valve, TAB 10.3
- Thermal transfer fluids, ESAM 17.11, 18.14, 18.16, 18.17, 18.18, 19.2, 19.3, 19.4
- Thermocouple, TAB 4.6
- Thermocouple thermometers, TAB 11.18
- Thermodynamics, TAB 2.1
- Thermohygrometer, TAB 11.21
- Thermometers, APP 10.17; TAB 9.6
 - glass tube, TAB 11.16
- Thermoplastics, FRP 1.1, 2.1, 7.7, B.1, D.6, E.2; PVC vii
- Thermoset plastics, FRP 1.1, 1.5, D.6, E.1; PVC vii
- Thermosiphon system, ESAM 18.13
- Thermostat, APP 3.10, 3.11; DEHG 6.1
 - diffuser mounted, APP 3.36
 - dual room, APP 3.10
 - heating-cooling, APP 3.11

multiple, APP 3.37
 multistage, APP 3.11
 operation, APP 3.19
 return air, APP 3.36
 submaster, APP 3.11
 summer - winter, APP 3.11
 wall-mounted, APP 3.36
 wet bulb, APP 3.11
 Thixed, FRP 2.2
 Thixotropes, FRP 2.4
 Three-phase circuits, TAB 3.3
 voltages, TAB 3.3
 Three-pipe systems, APP 8.8, 10.20; ESAM 2.7,
 4.3, 4.4, 22.2; TAB 9.3
 Three-Way Control Valve, TABPG 5.7
 Three-way valve, APP 3.17, 10.23; TAB 15.7
 control, APP 3.31
 diverting, APP 3.12, 3.17
 mixing, APP 3.12, 3.17
 Three-wire circuit, TAB 3.3
 Threshold limit values, See TLV
 Throttling range, APP 3.3, 3.18, 3.19
 Throttling ratio (turndown), APP 7.26
 Through-the-wall units, APP 11.1
 Throw distance, DD 3.3
 Tie rod, DCS 1.40
 at joints, DCS 1.42
 attachments, DCS 1.42
 installation, DCS 1.27
 requirements, DCS 1.27
 TIG, See Gas arc welding tungsten; MGW 2.5
 Tile, ASMM 6.5
 Time
 cycle, BSAR 1.5
 estimates, BSAR 2.8
 management, BSAR 1.3
 Time proportional mode, APP 3.34
 Time switches, program, APP 3.15
 Timed two-position action, APP 3.3
 Timers, APP 3.14
 internal, APP 3.15
 percentage cycle repeater, APP 3.15
 seven day, APP 3.15
 Tip speed, TAB 5.13
 Titanium, MGW 2.23
 T-method, DD 4.4
 Tolerances, FRP 4.1
 Toluene, IAQ 3.10
 Tonal (sound), DD 11.7
 Tools, BSAR 1.12
 Torches, See Equipment
 Total pressure method, DD 4.4
 Total quality management, COM 2.1, 5.1
 Tower
 cooling, APP 2.9
 nonmechanical draft, APP 12.16
 Tower conditions, TAB 15.6; TABPG 5.6
 Tower water flow, TAB 15.7; TABPG 5.7
 Tracking forms, IAQ A.1, A.1
 Trade show, BSAR 1.12
 Trailing edges, DD 5.15
 Training
 importance, MGW 9.2
 NTF, MGW 9.3
 programs, MGW 6.3
 qualification, MGW 9.3
 requalification, MGW 9.3
 resources, MGW 9.2
 Transducers, APP 3.10
 Transfer
 globular, MGW 2.8
 pulsed spray, MGW 2.8
 short circuit, MGW 2.8
 spray, MGW 2.8
 Transfer air, KVS 1.3
 Transferred, MGW 2.12
 Transformers, TAB 3.5
 Transition
 One-Way, FGDC 4.1
 Two-Way, FGDC 4.2
 Transition(s), DCS 2.10
 Transitions, FGDC 5.16

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Translucent, FRP 2.4
 Transmission heat gains, TAB 2.6
 Transverse bracing, SEIS 3.2
 Transverse joint(s), DCS 1.13; PVC 18, 23, 34
 bell and spigot, PVC 18, 34
 butt joint, PVC 18, 23, 34
 profiles, DCS 1.35
 reinforcement, DCS 1.13, 1.24
 sleeve joint, PVC 3, 18, 23
 special profiles, DCS 1.39
 specification, DCS 1.34
 Transverse locations, TAB 13.7; TABPG 3.7
 Trapeze angle loads, DCS 4.10
 Trapeze load diagram, DCS 4.12
 Trapeze type supports, RNDC 13.24, 13.25
 Tray, FSE 7.3
 Trichloroethane, IAQ 3.10
 Troubleshooting, MGW 7.5; TAB 9.8
 True variable air volume (VAV) system, APP 7.2
 Tubeaxial fans, TAB 5.2
 Tubular centrifugal fans, TAB 5.3
 Tungsten inert gas, See Gas arc welding tungsten
 Tungsten pointers, MGW 2.7
 Turbulent flow, TAB 2.23
 Turndown (shutoff), TAB 14.8; TABPG 4.8
 Turning vanes, DD 5.15, 6.4
 installation, DD 5.17
 missing, DD 5.15
 research, DD 5.16
 TV, BSAR 1.9, 1.14
 TVOC, IAQ 4.2
 Two-fan systems, APP 2.27
 Two-pipe system(s), APP 8.7, 10.19; TAB 9.3
 Two-pipe vacuum steam system, TAB 9.16
 Two-position, TAB 4.6
 action, APP 3.2
 control, APP 3.10
 dampers, APP 3.7
 devices, APP 3.18
 operation, APP 3.4
 relays, APP 3.14
 Two-way valves, APP 10.24; TAB 4.3
 Type I hood, KVS 2.1
 Type II hood, KVS 2.1, 2.4
 Type II non-grease ducts, KVS 3.1
 Types of controls, TAB 4.1
 Typical connections, TAB 9.18
 Typical system, KVS 1.2

U

U Value, TAB 2.4
 U.S. units
 air density correction factors, APP 14.19
 electric equations, APP 14.19
 hydraulic equations, APP 14.17

 hydraulic equivalents, APP 14.15
 pump equations, APP 14.15
 UFFI, IAQ E.2
 UL, FSDG 3.1, R.3; KVS 2.13
 UL 181, FGDC 3.3
 UL 555, FSDG 3.4, 5.4, 5.5
 UL Standard 555S, FSDG 3.4
 UL Standard 710, KVS 5.2
 UL Subject 762, KVS 4.1
 Ultra low penetration air (ULPA) filters, APP 9.5
 Underground ducts, RCSI 7.2
 Underslab duct, DCS 3.21
 construction standards, DCS 3.21
 encasement anchors, DCS 3.23
 profiles, DCS 3.22
 Underwriters Laboratories, KVS 1.4
 Underwriters Laboratories of Canada, KVS 1.4
 Unidirectional, APP 3.12
 Uniform Building Code, FSDG 3.1
 Uniform velocity profiles, DD 6.3
 Unit balancing, TAB 15.4; TABPG 5.4
 Unit heaters, APP 10.3; TAB 8.14
 Unit ventilators, APP 10.3; TAB 8.14
 Unit, terminal reheat, APP 6.3
 Unitary
 equipment, APP 11.3
 heat pumps (air-to-air), APP 11.5
 systems, APP 2.1, 11.1
 Units, RNDC 1.4, 3.3, 3.4, 8.2, 8.3, 9.3, 10.2, 10.3,
 11.3, 11.7, 11.30, 11.42, 12.1, 12.59, 15.9, 15.17,
 17.2, 17.8, 17.11, 17.12
 Units of measurement, TAB 2.1
 Unlined
 rectangular duct, DD 11.33
 round ducts, DD 11.35
 Unreinforced duct, DCS 1.15, 1.73
 schedule, DCS 1.62, 1.69
 wall thickness, DCS 1.69
 Unstiffened Solutions, RNDC 4.2, 6.3, 7.3, 8.4,
 8.54, 8.55, 9.4, 9.34, 9.35, 10.4, 10.34, 11.8, 11.31,
 11.43, 12.5, 17.7, 17.16
 Upstream, See Heater location
 Upstream turbulence, DD 11.18
 Use of tables and charts, DD 9.1
 Uses, FRP 1.1; LAG 1.1
 Utilities, BSAR 8.1, 8.17, 8.18
 Utility, KVS 4.2
 and access openings, KVS 4.2
 and motor covers, KVS 4.2
 U-tube, TAB 11.9
 UV (Ultraviolet), FRP 2.5, 3.1, D.6
 UV Stabilizer, FRP 2.5

V

V belt drive, TAB 5.9

Vacuum Steam System, TAB 9.16
 Valance units, APP 10.3
 Valve and damper linkages, TAB 4.5
 Valve coefficients, TAB 9.11
 Valve constant, TAB 4.3
 Valve(s), IDC 68
 automatic, APP 3.11
 butterfly, APP 3.12
 constant, APP 3.5
 diverting, APP 10.24
 double-seated, APP 3.11, 3.16, 10.25
 mixing, APP 10.24
 normally closed, APP 3.13
 normally open, APP 3.13
 operators, APP 3.12
 pilot piston, APP 3.11
 proportional, APP 3.4
 single-seated, APP 3.11, 3.16, 10.25
 thermal expansion, APP 12.4
 three-way, APP 3.12, 3.13, 3.17, 10.23
 two-way, APP 10.24
 Valve/flow meters, TAB 15.2; TABPG 5.2
 Valves set, TAB 15.3; TABPG 5.3
 Van stone connections, DCS 3.9; IDC 18
 Vane(s), DCS 2.5
 double thickness, DD 5.15
 missing, DD 5.15
 runners, DCS 2.5
 short radius, DCS A.42
 single thickness, DD 5.15
 support in elbows, DCS 2.6
 Vaneaxial fans, TAB 5.2
 Vanes
 Fibrous Glass, FGDC 4.6
 Sheet Metal, FGDC 4.6
 Vapors, dishwasher exhaust, DCS 2.22
 Variable air volume, See VAV; DD 3.16; TAB 6.1, 14.16
 (VAV) reheat systems, TAB 7.5
 Variable Air Volume Systems, TABPG 4.16
 Variable area grilles, TAB 6.12

Variable frequency AC motor speed controllers, APP 7.23
 Variable pitch motor sheaves, APP 7.22
 Variable pitch vane axial fans, APP 7.23
 Variable volume
 flow, TAB 15.9
 hydronic systems, APP 10.24
 reheat system, APP 7.29
 systems, TAB 15.11
 systems and temperature, APP 7.32
 Variable Volume Flow, TABPG 5.9
 Variable Volume Systems, TABPG 5.11
 Variable water flow, APP 3.30
 VAV
 air volume requirements, APP 7.25
 and perimeter air systems, APP 7.10
 applications, TAB 6.10
 box, APP 7.17
 control systems, APP 7.30
 fan air volume control, APP 7.18
 fan volume control, APP 7.20
 pressure dependency, APP 7.12
 reheat systems, APP 7.4
 static pressure control, APP 7.19
 supply air fan, APP 7.18
 system, TAB 6.3
 VAV boxes, TAB 14.8; TABPG 4.8
 VAV system(s), APP 7.1, 7.27
 bypass or dump, APP 7.4
 bypass type, APP 7.2
 categories, TAB 14.1
 characteristics, TAB 14.1
 design, APP 7.24
 dual duct, APP 7.5
 features, APP 7.8
 induction, APP 7.7
 pressure independent, TAB 14.4, 14.6
 sealing, DCS 1.9
 shutoff, APP 2.29
 true, APP 7.2
 types, APP 7.2

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



- typical, TAB 14.1
- VAV Systems
 - Categories, TABPG 4.1
 - Characteristics, TABPG 4.1
 - Pressure Independent, TABPG 4.4, 4.6
 - Typical, TABPG 4.1
- VAV terminal unit
 - fan powered, APP 7.14
 - independent pressure, APP 7.27
 - induction, APP 7.16
 - operation, APP 7.11
 - types of, APP 7.12
- V-blade, TAB 6.14
- Vegetation, IAQ 4.1
- Vehicle exhaust, IAQ 3.9
- Velocities, TAB 9.9
- Velocities vs. velocity pressure
 - (metric units), DD 14.17
 - (U.S.), DD 14.16
- Velocity, See Heater selection; DEHG 3.1; FGDC 2.1; TAB 2.20
 - classification, DD 4.5
 - exhaust air systems, APP 9.23
 - head, TAB 8.4
 - minimum, DEHG 3.1
 - profile(s), DD 6.3; TAB 2.20
 - reduction method, DD 4.4
 - total pressure, DD 4.4
 - uniform, DD 6.3
- Vent connectors, RCSI 10.2
 - clearance, RCSI 10.2
- Vent terminal, RCSI 10.4
- Ventilating ceilings, DD 3.11
- Ventilation, BSAR 6.3, 10.2; COM 3.3, 7.1, 9.4, 9.5; ESAM 1.7, 1.8, 2.1, 2.2, 2.5, 2.6, 2.8, 2.10, 3.1, 4.1, 4.5, 5.8, 5.14, 8.7, 9.1, 9.3, 10.2, 10.6, 10.8, 14.1, 14.2, 16.21, 17.1, 17.10, 18.5, 18.8, 22.4; IAQ 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 3.1, 3.10, 4.2, 6.12, 7.1, 11.4
 - air, RCSI 2.7; TAB 4.6
 - air, outdoor, APP 2.21
 - breathing zone, See BZV
 - carbon dioxide calculation, IAQ 10.3
 - concepts, KVS 1.2
 - dryer, RCSI 10.3
 - indicator, IAQ 10.3
 - issues, IAQ 3.7
 - makeBup air, RCSI 10.5
 - outside air rate, IAQ 7.1
 - size, RCSI 10.1
 - systems, TAB 13.8
 - ventilators, FRP 7.7, 9.8
 - venting, RCSI 10.1
 - vinyl ester, FRP 1.1, 2.2, 2.4, 2.5, D.1, D.6
 - worksheet, IAQ A.26
- Ventilation Systems, TABPG 3.8

- Ventilators, FRP 7.7, 9.8
 - design, ASMM 8.1
 - gooseneck, ASMM 8.1; DCS 5.8
 - gravity, DCS 5.9
 - rotation, ASMM 8.292
 - stationary, ASMM 8.295
- Venting, RCSI 10.1; TAB 9.5
 - dryer, RCSI 10.6
 - size, RCSI 10.1
- Venturi Tube, TAB 11.24
- Vernier control mode, APP 3.34
- Vertical loads, SEIS 1.1
- Vertical risers, SEIS 3.3, B.1
- Vertical support system, SEIS 3.1
- Vibration, APP 2.7; BSAR 2.21
- Vibration testing, DCS 7.12
 - cross breaking, DCS 7.15
 - equipment, DCS 7.12, 7.14
 - fatigue, DCS 7.15
 - objectives, DCS 7.12
 - oscillograph traces, DCS 7.16
 - results, DCS 7.13, 7.17
 - threshold velocity, DCS 7.13
- Viscosity, FRP 2.2, 8.2, D.2
- Viscous impingement filters, APP 2.14
- VOC, IAQ 3.8, 10.1, 10.11
- VOCs, compounds, IAQ 3.8
- Volatile organic compounds (VOCs), KVS 4.1; OBUC 2.2
- Voltage, MGW 3.2
- Volt-ammeter, TAB 11.22
- Volume control, TAB 6.3
- Volume dampers, FRP 7.6, 9.6; PVC 41; TAB 6.5
- Vortex, TAB 8.6, 12.7; TABPG 2.7
- VVT systems, APP 7.32

W

- Walkthrough, IAQ 6.3, 6.3, 8.1
- Wall
 - corners, ASMM 6.59
 - features, ASMM 6.51
 - lining, ASMM 8.32
 - parapet, ASMM 6.57
 - penetration, ASMM 6.63, 6.65, 6.67, 6.69
 - roof, ASMM 6.55
- Wall cabinets, FSE 8.1
- Wall mounted thermostat, APP 3.36
- Wall paneling, FSE 5.1
- Wall systems, See Metal wall systems
- Wall termination, KVS 4.5
 - and louvers, KVS 4.5
- Walls, SEIS 3.2
- Warm-up cycles, APP 7.29
- Warm-up/cool-down, control cycle, APP 3.22

Washer, FGDC 5.16
 Washing and scrubbing, APP 2.21
 Waste heat, pump, APP 11.13
 Water, IAQ 10.1
 chilled, BSAR 2.16
 cooled condensers, APP 12.7
 domestic, BSAR 2.15
 flow sensing elements, APP 3.9
 heat source, APP 11.13
 hot, BSAR 2.16
 piping, APP 14.23
 spray humidifiers, APP 3.27
 Water, Flow-Pressure Drop, TAB 9.10
 Water chillers, TAB 8.13
 Water diverter, ASMM 1.51; RSMG 1.17, 1.18
 Water flow, TAB 15.8; TABPG 5.8
 Water system
 dual temperature, APP 10.18
 low temperature, APP 10.18
 medium temperature, APP 10.18
 Water, Vapor, TAB 2.6
 Water-cooled condenser, APP 12.7
 Waterstops, RSMG 5.6
 Water-to-steam heat exchangers, APP 10.12
 Water-to-water, heat exchangers, APP 10.12
 Water-to-water, heat pump, APP 11.13
 Water-wash assemblies, KVS 2.13
 Watt density, DEHG 3.2
 Wax, IAQ 4.1
 Wearing rings, TAB 8.3
 Weatherability, FRP 2.2
 Weather-protected openings, KVS 3.2
 Weight, LAG 2.20
 aluminum duct, RNDC 13.82-13.85
 round duct, DCS A.10
 steel duct, RNDC 13.54-13.81, W
 eight per square foot of sheet metals, galvanized
 steel, DCS A.8
 Weld joints, See Welding positions, See Welding
 symbols
 Weld strength, MGW 5.4

Welders
 hiring, MGW 10.2
 seam, MGW 3.8
 Welding, SEIS 3.2, B.1
 amperage, MGW 3.3
 copper, MGW 2.3, 3.5
 current, MGW 6.3
 distortion, MGW 5.2
 inspection, MGW 7.3
 jigging, MGW 5.2
 machine, MGW 3.6
 performance, MGW 6.3
 productivity, MGW 6.3
 qualification, MGW 6.3
 quality, MGW 6.2, 7.2
 repeatability, MGW 6.2
 specification, MGW 6.7
 stick, MGW 2.4
 terms, MGW 11.1
 test, MGW 6.9, 10.2
 types, MGW 5.2
 variables, MGW 6.3
 Welding equipment, MGW 3.2
 cable(s), MGW 3.4
 wire, MGW 2.7
 Welding position(s), MGW 5.3, 5.10, 6.3
 Welding procedure(s), MGW 6.3, 6.5; RNDC iii
 Welding stiffeners (Reinforcements), RNDC 4.7,
 5.8, 12.21, 12.22, 12.23, 12.26
 Welding symbols, IDC 120; MGW 5.2; RNDC 1.4,
 14.1, 14.13, 14.14, 14.15, 14.16, 14.17
 Welds
 thermostat, APP 3.11
 Wet bulb, TAB 2.8
 temperature, TAB 2.10
 Wet coil conditions, TAB 13.6; TABPG 3.6
 What is FRP, FRP 1.1
 Wheels, KVS 8.3
 Wind conversion table, RCDC 7.62
 Wind currents, KVS 5.5
 Wind effect, DD 5.6

APP	HVAC Systems – Applications	FRP	Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual	OBUC	IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction
ASMM	Architectural Sheet Metal Manual	FSDG	Fire Smoke and Radiation Damper Guide for HVAC Systems	PVC	Thermoplastic Duct (PVC) Construction Manual
BSAR	Building Systems Analysis & Retrofit Manual	FSE	Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines	RCDC	Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards
COM	HVAC Systems Commissioning Manual	GSSC	Guide for Steel Stack Construction	RCSI	Residential Comfort Systems Installation Standards
DCS	HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible	IAQ	Indoor Air Quality – A Systems Approach	RNDC	Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards
DD	HVAC Systems Duct Design	IDC	Accepted Industry Practice for Industrial Duct Construction	RSMG	Residential Sheet Metal Guidelines
DEHG	Ducted Electric Heat Guide for Air Handling Systems	KVS	Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Guidelines	SEIS	Seismic Restraint Manual – Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
ESAM	Energy Systems Analysis and Management	LAG	Accepted Industry Practices for Sheet Metal Lagging	TAB	HVAC Systems Testing Adjusting and Balancing
FGDC	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards	LTM	HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual	TABPG	TAB Procedural Guide
		MGW	The Manager's Guide for Welding		



Wind Load, RNDC iii, 4.1, 4.3, 4.4, 4.6, 4.9, 4.11, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.6, 6.1, 6.6, 7.1, 7.4, 7.5, 7.9, 7.16, 7.23, 7.27, 7.29, 7.33, 17.10
Wind loading, LAG 2.12
Window(s), ASMM 6.45; RSMG 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.5
Wire, FGDC 5.1
 surface temperature, DEHG 1.1
Working tests, TAB 14.17; TABPG 4.17
Worksheet, duct sizing, DD 7.24, 8.24
World Health Organization, IAQ 1.1
Woven ring, FRP 2.5, 3.1, 5.11, 7.1, 7.7, D.2, D.3, D.7
Wrapping systems, KVS 3.3

Y

Yellow pages, BSAR 1.15

Yield Strength, RNDC 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 4.2, 4.3, 7.2, 7.3, 12.34, 12.52, 12.55, 12.59, 12.60, 12.61, 13.29, 14.2, 17.8, 17.9, 17.12, 17.13
Yield Strength Reduction Factor, RNDC 3.8, 3.11, 4.1, 6.1, 7.2

Z

Z-Bar, LAG 2.4
Z-Clip, LAG 2.4
Zero flow readings, TAB 15.3; TABPG 5.3
Z-Girt, LAG 2.4
Zinc coating thickness and weight, DCS A.2
Zone balancing, TAB 13.5; TABPG 3.5
Zone control, APP 3.29
 hydronic, APP 3.33
Zone heating-cooling coordination, APP 3.29
Zone record, IAQ A.4
Zoned smoke control, APP 9.41; FSDG 2.2
Zoning, APP 3.1; DD 4.2